

The **songs** package*

Kevin W. Hamlen

March 2, 2013

Abstract

The **songs** package produces songbooks that contain lyrics and chords (but not full sheet music). It allows lyric books, chord books, overhead slides, and digital projector slides to all be maintained and generated from a single L^AT_EX source document. Automatic transposition, guitar tablature diagrams, handouts, and a variety of specialized song indexes are supported.

1 Introduction

The **songs** L^AT_EX package produces books of songs that contain lyrics and (optionally) chords. A single source document yields a lyric book for singers, a chord book for musicians, and overhead or digital projector slides for corporate singing.

The software is especially well suited for churches and religious fellowships desiring to create their own books of worship songs. Rather than purchasing a fixed hymnal of songs, the **songs** package allows worship coordinators to maintain a constantly evolving repertoire of music to which they can add and remove songs over time. As the book content changes, the indexes, spacing, and other formatting details automatically adjust to stay consistent. Songs can also be quickly selected and arranged for specific events or services through the use of scripture indexes, automatic transposition, and handout and slide set creation features.

2 Terms of Use

The **songs** package is free software; you can redistribute it and/or modify it under the terms of the GNU General Public License as published by the Free Software Foundation; either version 2 of the License, or (at your option) any later version. A copy of the license can be found in §15.

*This document corresponds to **songs** v2.15, dated 2013/02/02, © 2013 Kevin W. Hamlen, and distributed under version 2 the GNU General Public License as published by the Free Software Foundation.

This program is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU General Public License in §15 for more details. A copy of the license can also be obtained by writing to the Free Software Foundation, Inc., 51 Franklin Street, Fifth Floor, Boston, MA 02110-1301, USA.

This software is copyright © 2013 Kevin W. Hamlen. For contact information or the latest version, see the project webpage at:

<http://songs.sourceforge.net>

3 Sample Document

For those who would like to start making song books quickly, the following is a sample document that yields a simple song book with one song and one title index. Starting from this template, you can begin to add songs and customizations to create a larger book. Instructions for compiling this sample song book follow the listing.

```
\documentclass{article}
\usepackage[chorded]{songs}

\newindex{titleidx}{titleidx}
\noversenumbers

\begin{document}
\showindex{Complete Index of Songs}{titleidx}
\songsection{Worship Songs}

\begin{songs}{titleidx}
\begin{song}{Doxology}[by={Louis Bourgeois and Thomas Ken},
sr={Revelation 5:13},
cr={Public domain.},
index={Praise God, from Whom all blessings flow}]
\beginverse
\[[G]Praise God, \[D]from \[Em]Whom \[Bm]all \[Em]bless\[D]ings \[G]flow;
\[[G]Praise Him, all \[D]crea\[Em]tures \[C]here \[G]be\[D]low;
\[[Em]Praise \[D]Him \[G]a\[D]bove, \[G]ye \[C]heav'n\[D]ly \[Em]host;
\[[G]Praise Fa\[Em]ther, \[D]Son, \[Am]and \[G/B G/C]Ho\[D]ly \[G]Ghost.
\[C]A\[G]men.
\endverse
\endsong
\end{songs}

\end{document}
```

To compile this book, execute three commands. First, use L^AT_EX (pdf_latex is recommended) to compile the document:

```
pdflatex mybook.tex
```

(where `mybook.tex` is the name of the source document above). Next, use the `songidx` program provided with this distribution to generate the indexes:

```
songidx titleidx.sxd titleidx.sbx
```

Finally, regenerate the document using L^AT_EX so that the newly generated index data will be included:

```
pdflatex mybook.tex
```

The final document is named `mybook.pdf` if you use `pdflatex` or `mybook.dvi` if you use regular `latex`.

A copy of the first page of a sample song section is shown in Figure 1. The page shown in that figure is from a chorded version of the book. When generating a lyric version, the chords are omitted. See §4 for information on how to generate different versions of the same book.

4 Initialization and Options

Each L^AT_EX document that uses the `songs` package should contain a line like the following near the top of the document:

```
\usepackage[<options>]{songs}
```

Supported *<options>* include the following:

<code>lyric</code>	Output Type. The <code>songs</code> package can produce four kinds of books: lyric books, chord books, books of overhead slides, and raw text output. You can specify which kind of book is to be produced by specifying one of <code>lyric</code> , <code>chorded</code> , <code>slides</code> , or <code>rawtext</code> as an option. If none of these are specified, <code>chorded</code> is the default.
<code>chorded</code>	Lyric books omit all chords, whereas chord books include chords and additional information for musicians (specified using <code>\musicnote</code>). Books of overhead slides omit all chords and typeset one song per page in a large font, centered.
<code>slides</code>	Raw text output yields an ascii text file named <i><jobname>.txt</i> (where <i><jobname></i> is the root filename) containing lyrics without chords. This can be useful for importing song books into another program, such as a spell-checker.
<code>rawtext</code>	Chords can be turned on or off in the middle of the document by using the <code>\chordson</code> or <code>\chordsoff</code> macros.
<code>\chordson</code>	Slides mode can be activated in the middle of the document by using the <code>\slides</code> macro. For best results, this should typically only be done in the document preamble or at the beginning of a fresh page.
<code>\chordsoff</code>	
<code>\slides</code>	
<code>nomeasures</code>	Measure Bars. The <code>songs</code> package includes a facility for placing measure bars in chord books (see §7.7). To omit these measure bars, use the <code>nomeasures</code> option; to display them, use the <code>showmeasures</code> option (the default). Measure bars can also be turned on or off in the middle of the document by using the <code>\measureson</code> or <code>\measuresoff</code> macros.
<code>showmeasures</code>	
<code>\measureson</code>	
<code>\measuresoff</code>	

Worship Songs

1

Doxology

Revelation 5:13
Louis Bourgeois and Thomas Ken

G D Em Bm Em D
Praise God, from Whom all blessings
G
flow;

G D Em C GD
Praise Him, all creatures here below;
Em D G D G C D Em
Praise Him a - bove, ye heav'nly host;

G Em D Am
Praise Father, Son, and
G/B G/C D G
Ho - ly Ghost.

C G
A - men.

Public domain.

*The LORD is my rock and my fortress
and my deliverer,
my God, my rock, in whom I take
refuge,
my shield, and the horn of my
salvation, my stronghold.
I call upon the LORD, who is worthy to
be praised,
and I am saved from my enemies.*

*The cords of death encompassed me;
the torrents of destruction assailed
me;
the cords of Sheol entangled me;
the snares of death confronted me.*

*In my distress I called upon the LORD;
to my God I cried for help.
From his temple he heard my voice,
and my cry to him reached his ears.*

Psalm 18:2-6

2

A Mighty Fortress Is Our God

Martin Luther

A C#m B7 E
A mighty Fortress is our God,
D A E7 A
A bulwark never fail - ing.

C#m B7 E
Our helper He, amid the flood
D A E7 A
Of mortal ills prevailing.

B7sus4 B7 E
For still our an - cient foe
A E/G# F#m
Doth seek to work us woe;

B7 E
His craft and pow'r are great,
Bm C#
And, armed with cruel hate,

D A E7 A
On earth is not his e - qual.

A C#m B7 E
Did we in our own strength confide,
D A E7 A
Our striving would be los - ing.

C#m B7 E
Were not the right Man on our side,
D A E7 A
The Man of God's own choosing.

B7sus4 B7 E
Dost ask who that may be?
A E/G# F#m
Christ Jesus, it is He;

B7 E
Lord Sabaoth His Name,
Bm C#
From age to age the same;

D A E7 A
And He must win the bat - tle.

Public Domain.

Figure 1: Sample page from a chord book

<code>transposecapos</code>	<p>Transposition. The <code>transposecapos</code> option changes the effect of the <code>\capo</code> macro. Normally, using <code>\capo{⟨n⟩}</code> within a song environment produces a textual note in chord books that suggests the use of a guitar capo on fret $\langle n \rangle$. However, when the <code>transposecapos</code> option is active, these textual notes are omitted and instead the effect of <code>\capo{⟨n⟩}</code> is the same as for <code>\transpose{⟨n⟩}</code>. That is, chords between the <code>\capo</code> macro and the end of the song are automatically transposed up by $\langle n \rangle$ half-steps. This can be useful for adapting a chord book for guitarists to one that can be used by pianists, who don't have the luxury of capos. See §7.8 and §10 for more information on the <code>\capo</code> and <code>\transpose</code> macros.</p>
<code>noindexes</code> <code>\indexeson</code> <code>\indexesoff</code> <code>nopdfindex</code>	<p>Indexes. The <code>noindexes</code> option suppresses the typesetting of any in-document indexes. Display of indexes can also be turned on or off using the <code>\indexeson</code> and <code>\indexesoff</code> macros.</p> <p>PDF bookmark entries and hyperlinks can be suppressed with the <code>nopdfindex</code> option. For finer control of PDF indexes, see §11.6.</p>
<code>noscripture</code> <code>\scriptureon</code> <code>\scriptureoff</code>	<p>Scripture Quotations. The <code>noscripture</code> option omits scripture quotations (see §8.2) from the output. You can also turn scripture quotations on or off in the middle of the document by using <code>\scriptureon</code> or <code>\scriptureoff</code>, respectively.</p>
<code>noshading</code>	<p>Shaded Boxes. The <code>noshading</code> option causes all shaded boxes, such as those that surround song numbers and textual notes, to be omitted. You might want to use this option if printing such shaded boxes causes problems for your printer or uses too much ink.</p>
<code>\includeonlysongs</code>	<p>Partial Song Sets. Often it is useful to be able to extract a subset of songs from the master document—e.g. to create a handout or set of overhead slides for a specific worship service. To do this, you can type <code>\includeonlysongs{⟨songlist⟩}</code> in the document preamble (i.e., before the <code>\begin{document}</code> line), where $\langle songlist \rangle$ is a comma-separated list of the song numbers to include. For example,</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><code>\includeonlysongs{37,50,2}</code></p> <p>creates a document consisting only of songs 37, 50, and 2, in that order.</p> <p>Partial books generated with <code>\includeonlysongs</code> omit all scripture quotations (§8.2), and ignore uses of <code>\nextcol</code>, <code>\brk</code>, <code>\sclearpage</code>, and <code>\scleardpage</code> between songs unless they are followed by a star (e.g., <code>\nextcol*</code>). To force a column- or page-break at a specific point in a partial book, add the word <code>nextcol</code>, <code>brk</code>, <code>sclearpage</code>, or <code>scleardpage</code> at the corresponding point in the $\langle songlist \rangle$.</p> <p>The <code>\includeonlysongs</code> macro only reorders songs within each <code>songs</code> environment (see §7), not between different <code>songs</code> environments. It also cannot be used in conjunction with the <code>rawtext</code> option.</p>

5 Book Sections

`\songsection` **Section Titles.** Section titles in a song book can be produced with
`\songchapter` `\songsection{<title>}`

which acts like L^AT_EX's `\section` command except that it centers the *<title>* text in sans serif font and omits the section number. When using the `book` document class, use `\songchapter` instead of `\songsection`.

`\newindex` **Indexes.** The `songs` package supports three kinds of indexes: indexes by title
`\newauthorindex` and/or notable lyrics, indexes by author, and indexes by scripture reference. To
`\newscripindex` generate an index, first declare the index in the document preamble (i.e., before the `\begin{document}` line) with one of the following:

```
\newindex{<id>}{<filename>}
\newauthorindex{<id>}{<filename>}
\newscripindex{<id>}{<filename>}
```

The *<id>* should be an alphabetic identifier that will be used to identify the index in other macros that reference it. The *<filename>* should be a string that, when appended with an extension, constitutes a valid filename on the system. Auxiliary files named *<filename>.sxd* and *<filename>.sbx* are generated during the automatic index generation process. For example:

```
\newindex{mainindex}{idxfile}
```

creates a title index named “mainindex” whose data is stored in files named *idxfile.sxd* and *idxfile.sbx*.

`\showindex` To display the index in the document, use:

```
\showindex[<columns>]{<title>}{<id>}
```

where *<id>* is the same identifier used in the `\newindex`, `\newauthorindex`, or `\newscripindex` command, and where the *<title>* is the title of the index, which should consist only of simple text (no font or formatting macros, since those cannot be used in pdf bookmark indexes). The `[<columns>]` part is optional; if specified it dictates the number of columns if the index can't fit in a single column. For example, for a 2-column title index, write:

```
\showindex[2]{Index of Song Titles}{mainindex}
```

6 Compiling

As with a typical L^AT_EX document, compiling a song book document requires three steps. First, use L^AT_EX (`pdflatex` is recommended) to generate auxiliary files from the `.tex` file:

```
pdflatex mybook.tex
```

Second, use the `songidx` program to generate an index for each index that you declared with `\newindex`, `\newauthorindex`, or `\newscripindex`. The syntax of the `songidx` command is:

```
songidx [-b <canon>.can] <filename>.sxd <filename>.sbx
```

where `<filename>` is the same `<filename>` that was used in the `\newindex`, `\newauthorindex`, or `\newscripindex` macro. If the index was declared with `\newscripindex`, then the `-b` option is used to specify which version of the bible you wish to use as a basis for sorting your scripture index. The `<canon>` part can be any of the `.can` files provided with the `songidx` distribution. If you are using a Protestant, Catholic, or Greek Orthodox Christian bible with book names in English, then the `bible.can` canon file should work well. For other bibles, you should create your own `.can` file by copying and modifying one of the existing `.can` files.

For example, if your song book `.tex` file contains the lines

```
\newindex{titleidx}{titlfile}
\newauthorindex{authidx}{authfile}
\newscripindex{scripidx}{scrpfile}
```

then the commands to generate indexes sorted according to a Christian English bible are:

```
songidx titlfile.sxd titlfile.sbx
songidx authfile.sxd authfile.sbx
songidx -b bible.can scrpfile.sxd scrpfile.sbx
```

Once the indexes are generated, generate the final book by invoking L^AT_EX one more time:

```
pdflatex mybook.tex
```

7 Songs

7.1 Beginning a Song

Songs **Song Sets.** Songs are contained within `songs` environments. Each `songs` environment begins and ends with:

```
\begin{songs}{<indexes>}
:
\end{songs}
```

`<indexes>` is a comma-separated list of index identifiers (the `<id>`'s specified with `\newindex`)—one identifier for each index that is to include songs in this song set. Between the `\begin{songs}` and `\end{songs}` lines of a song section can appear only songs (see below) or inter-song environments (see §8). No text in a `songs` environment may lie outside of these environments.

`\beginsong` **Songs.** A song begins and ends with:

```
\endsong      \beginsong{<titles>}[<otherinfo>]
               :
               \endsong
```

Songs should appear only within **songs** environments (see above) unless you are supplying your own page-builder (see §11.5).

In the `\beginsong` line, `<titles>` is one or more song titles separated by `\\`. If multiple titles are provided, the first is typeset normally atop the song and the rest are each typeset in parentheses on separate lines.

The `[<otherinfo>]` part is an optional comma-separated list of key-value pairs (keyvals) of the form `<key>=<value>`. The possible keys and their values are:

<code>by={<authors>}</code>	<i>authors, composers, and other contributors</i>
<code>cr={<copyright>}</code>	<i>copyright information</i>
<code>li={<license>}</code>	<i>licensing information</i>
<code>sr={<refs>}</code>	<i>related scripture references</i>
<code>index={<lyrics>}</code>	<i>an extra index entry for a line of lyrics</i>
<code>ititle={<title>}</code>	<i>an extra index entry for a hidden title</i>

For example, a song that begins and ends with

```
\beginsong{Title1 \\ Title2}[by={Joe Smith}, sr={Job 3},
  cr={\copyright~2013 XYZ.}, li={Used with permission.}]
\endsong
```

looks like



The four keyvals used in the above example are described in detail in the remainder of this section; the final two are documented in §7.9. You can also create your own keyvals (see §11.8).

by= Song Authors. The `by={<authors>}` keyval lists one or more authors, composers, translators, etc. An entry is added to each author index associated with the current **songs** environment for each contributor listed. Contributors are expected to be separated by commas, semicolons, or the word **and**. For example:

```
by={Fred Smith, John Doe, and Billy Bob}
```

Words separated by a macro-space (`_`) or tie (`~`) instead of a regular space are treated as single words by the indexer. For example, `The_Vienna_Boys'_Choir` is indexed as “Choir, The Vienna Boys’” but `The_Vienna_Boys'_Choir` is indexed as “Vienna Boys’ Choir, The”.

cr= Copyright Info. The `cr={\langle copyright \rangle}` keyval specifies the copyright-holder of the song, if any. For example:

```
cr={\copyright~2000 ABC Songs, Inc.}
```

Copyright information is typeset in fine print at the bottom of the song.

li= Licensing Info. Licensing information is provided by `li={\langle license \rangle}`, where `\setlicense{\langle license \rangle}` is any text. Licensing information is displayed in fine print under the song just after the copyright information (if any). Alternatively, writing `\setlicense{\langle license \rangle}` anywhere between the `\beginsong` and `\endsong` lines is equivalent to using `li={\langle license \rangle}` in the `\beginsong` line.

When many songs in a book are covered by a common license, it is usually convenient to create a macro to abbreviate the licensing information. For example, if your organization has a music license from Christian Copyright Licensing International with license number 1234567, you might define a macro like

```
\newcommand{\CCLI}{(CCLI \#1234567)}
```

Then you could write `li=\CCLI` in the `\beginsong` line of each song covered by CCLI.

sr= Scripture References. The `songs` package has extensive support for scripture citations and indexes of scripture citations. To cite scripture references for the song, use the keyval `sr={\langle refs \rangle}`, where `\langle refs \rangle` is a list of scripture references. Index entries are added to all scripture indexes associated with the current `songs` environment for each such reference. The `songidx` index generation program expects `\langle refs \rangle` to be a list of references in which semicolons are used to separate references to different books, and commas are used to separate references to different chapters and verses within the same book. For example, one valid scripture citation is

```
sr={John 3:16,17, 4:1-5; Jude 3}
```

The full formal syntax of a valid `\langle refs \rangle` argument is given in Figure 2. In those syntax rules, `\langle chapter \rangle` and `\langle verse \rangle` stand for arabic numbers denoting a valid chapter number for the given book, and a valid verse number for the given chapter, respectively. Note that when referencing a book that has only one chapter, one should list only its verses after the book name (rather than `1:\langle verses \rangle`).

7.2 Verses and Choruses

\beginverse Starting A Verse Or Chorus. Between the `\beginsong` and `\endsong` lines of a song can appear any number of verses and choruses. A verse begins and ends with:

```
\beginchorus
\endchorus
\beginverse
:
\endverse
```

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle refs \rangle &\longrightarrow \langle nothing \rangle \mid \langle ref \rangle ; \sqcup \langle ref \rangle ; \dots ; \sqcup \langle ref \rangle \\
\langle ref \rangle &\longrightarrow \langle many-chptr-book \rangle \sqcup \langle chapters \rangle \mid \langle one-chptr-book \rangle \sqcup \langle verses \rangle \\
\langle many-chptr-book \rangle &\longrightarrow \text{Genesis} \mid \text{Exodus} \mid \text{Leviticus} \mid \text{Numbers} \mid \dots \\
\langle one-chptr-book \rangle &\longrightarrow \text{Obadiah} \mid \text{Philemon} \mid 2 \text{ John} \mid 3 \text{ John} \mid \text{Jude} \\
\langle chapters \rangle &\longrightarrow \langle chref \rangle , \sqcup \langle chref \rangle , \dots , \sqcup \langle chref \rangle \\
\langle chref \rangle &\longrightarrow \langle chapter \rangle \mid \langle chapter \rangle - \langle chapter \rangle \mid \langle chapter \rangle : \langle verses \rangle \mid \\
&\quad \langle chapter \rangle : \langle verse \rangle - \langle chapter \rangle : \langle verse \rangle \\
\langle verses \rangle &\longrightarrow \langle vref \rangle , \langle vref \rangle , \dots , \langle vref \rangle \\
\langle vref \rangle &\longrightarrow \langle verse \rangle \mid \langle verse \rangle - \langle verse \rangle
\end{aligned}$$

Figure 2: Formal syntax rules for song scripture references

and a chorus begins and ends with:

```

\beginchorus
:
\endchorus

```

Verses are numbered (unless `\noversenumbers` has been used to suppress verse numbering) whereas choruses have a vertical line placed to their left.

To create an unnumbered verse, begin the verse with `\beginverse*` instead. This can be used for things that aren't really verses but should be typeset like a verse (e.g. intros, endings, and the like). A verse that starts with `\beginverse*` should still end with `\endverse` (not `\endverse*`).

Within a verse or chorus you should enter one line of text for each line of lyrics. Each line of the source document produces a separate line in the resulting document (like L^AT_EX's `\obeylines` macro). Lines that are too long to fit are wrapped with hanging indentation of width `\parindent`.

`\repchoruses` **Repeating Choruses.** When making overhead slides, it is often convenient to repeat the song's chorus after the first verse on each page, so that the projector-operator need not flip back to the first slide each time the chorus is to be sung. You can say `\repchoruses` to automate this process. This causes the first chorus in each song to be automatically repeated after the first verse on each subsequent page of the song (unless that verse is already immediately followed by a chorus). If the first chorus is part of a set of two or more consecutive choruses, then the whole set of choruses is repeated. (A set of choruses is assumed to consist of things like pre-choruses that should always be repeated along with the chorus.) Choruses are not automatically inserted immediately after unnumbered verses (i.e., verses that begin with `\beginverse*`). Unnumbered verses are assumed to be bridges or endings that aren't followed by a chorus.

`\norepchoruses` The above covers the common cases, but some songs have more complex forms that demand a manual approach. Before a song with irregular form, say `\norepchoruses` to turn automatic chorus-repeating off. Then, at points within

the song where you want a chorus to be repeated on the overhead slides, type a construction like,

```
\ifslides
\beginchorus
:
\endchorus
\fi
```

and copy and paste the desired chorus into the middle. This inserts a repeated chorus at that point when generating slides, but not when generating a lyric book or chord book. After the song is concluded, type

```
\ifslides\repchoruses\fi
```

to turn automatic chorus-repeating back on, if desired.

7.3 Chords

- \[Between the `\beginverse` and `\endverse` lines, or between the `\beginchorus` and `\endchorus` lines, chords can be produced using the macro `\[⟨chordname⟩]`.
- # Chords only appear in chord books; they are omitted from lyric books. The `⟨chordname⟩` may consist of arbitrary text. To produce sharp and flat symbols, use `#` and `&` respectively.

Any text that immediately follows the `\[` macro with no intervening whitespace is assumed to be the word or syllable that is to be sung as the chord is struck, and is therefore typeset directly under the chord. For example:

```
\[E&]peace and \[Am]joy
```

produces E^b Am
peace and joy

If whitespace (a space or `⟨return⟩`) immediately follows, then the chord name be typeset without any lyric text below it, indicating that the chord is to be struck between any surrounding words. For example:

```
\[E&]peace and \[Am] joy
```

produces E^b Am
peace and joy

If the lyric text that immediately follows the chord contains another chord, and if the width of the chord name exceeds the width of the lyric text, then hyphenation is added automatically. For example:

```
\[F#sus4]e\[A]ternal
```

produces $F^\#sus4$ A
e - ternal

Sequences of chords that sit above a single word can be written back-to-back with no intervening space, or as a single chord:

```
\[A]\[B]\[Em]joy
```

produces A B Em
joy

```
\[A B Em]joy
```

produces A B Em
joy

The only difference between the two examples above is that the chords in the first example can later be replayed separately (see §7.4) whereas the chords in the second example can only be replayed as a group.

You can explicitly dictate how much of the text following a chord macro is to appear under the chord name by using braces. To exclude text that would normally be drawn under the chord, use a pair of braces that includes the chord macro. For example:

`{\[G A]e}ternal` *produces* $\overset{GA}{e} - \text{ternal}$

(Without the braces, the syllables “ternal” would not be pushed out away from the chord.) This might be used to indicate that the chord transition occurs on the first syllable rather than as the second syllable is sung.

Contrastingly, braces that do not include the chord itself can be used to include text under a chord that would otherwise be excluded. For example:

`\[Gmaj7sus4]{th' eternal}` *produces* $\overset{Gmaj7sus4}{th' eternal}$

Without the braces, the word “eternal” would be pushed out away from the chord so that the chord would appear only over the partial word “th”.

\nolyrics Chords Without Lyrics. Sometimes you may want to write a line of chords with no lyrics in it at all, such as for an instrumental intro or solo. To make the chords in such a line sit on the baseline instead of raised above it, use the `\nolyrics` macro. For example:

`{\nolyrics Intro: \[G] \[A] \[D]}` *produces* Intro: $G A D$

Note the enclosing braces that determine how long the effect should last. Multiple lines can be included in the braces. Instrumental solos should typically not appear in lyric books, so such lines should usually also be surrounded by `\ifchorded` and `\fi` (see §11.4).

\DeclareLyricChar Symbols Under Chords. If you are typesetting songs in a language whose alphabet contains symbols that L^AT_EX treats as punctuation, you can use the `\DeclareLyricChar` macro to instruct the **songs** package to treat the symbol as non-chord-ending, so that it is included under chords by default just like an alphabetic character.

`\DeclareLyricChar{⟨token⟩}`

Here, `⟨token⟩` must be a single T_EX macro control sequence, active character, letter (something T_EX assigns catcode 11), or punctuation symbol (something T_EX assigns catcode 12). For example, by default,

`\[Fmaj7]s\dag range` *produces* $\overset{Fmaj7}{s - \dag} range$

because `\dag` is not recognized as an alphabetic symbol; but if you first type,

`\DeclareLyricChar{\dag}`

then instead you will get:

`\[Fmaj7]s\dag range` produces *Fmaj7*
s†range

`\DeclareNonLyric` Likewise, you can type

`\DeclareNonLyric{⟨token⟩}`

to reverse the above effect and force a token to be lyric-ending. Such tokens are pushed out away from long chord names so that they never fall under a chord, and hyphenation is added to the resulting gap.

`\DeclareNoHyphen` To declare a token to be lyric-ending but without the added hyphenation, use `\DeclareNoHyphen{⟨token⟩}` instead. Such tokens are pushed out away from long chord names so that they never fall under the chord, but hyphenation is not added to the resulting gap.

`\MultiwordChords` **Extending Chords Over Adjacent Words.** The `\MultiwordChords` macro forces multiple words to be squeezed under one chord by default. Normally a long chord atop a short lyric pushes subsequent lyrics away to make room for the chord:

`\[Gmaj7sus4]my life` produces *Gmaj7sus4*
my life

But if you first type `\MultiwordChords`, then instead you get the more compact:

`\[Gmaj7sus4]my life` produces *Gmaj7sus4*
my life

Authors should exercise caution when using `\MultiwordChords` because including many words under a single chord can often produce output that is ambiguous or misleading to musicians. For example,

`\[F G Am]me free` produces *F G Am*
me free

This might be misleading to musicians if all three chords are intended to be played while singing the word “me.” Liberal use of braces is therefore required to make `\MultiwordChords` produce good results, which is why it isn’t the default.

`\shrp` **Accidentals Outside Chords.** Sharp and flat symbols can be produced with `#`
`\flt` and `&` when they appear in chord macros, but if you wish to produce those symbols in other parts of the document, you must use the `\shrp` and `\flt` macros. For example, to define a macro that produces a *C#* chord, use:

`\newcommand{\Csharp}{C\shrp}`

7.4 Replaying Chords

- Many songs consist of multiple verses that use the same chords. The `songs` package simplifies this common case by providing a means to replay the chord sequence of a previous verse without having to retype all the chords. To replay a chord from a previous verse, type a hat symbol (^) anywhere you would otherwise use a chord macro (`\[]`). For example,

```
\beginverse
\GThis is the \Cfirst \Gverse.
\endverse
\beginverse
The ^second verse ^ has the same ^chords.
\endverse
```

produces

$\overset{G}{\text{This is the first verse.}}$

$\overset{G}{\text{The second verse}} \overset{C}{\text{ has the same }} \overset{G}{\text{ chords.}}$

Normal chords can appear amidst replayed chords without disrupting the sequence of chords being replayed. Thus, a third verse could say,

```
\beginverse
The ^third verse ^has a \[Cm]new ^chord.
\endverse
```

to produce

$\overset{G}{\text{The third verse}} \overset{C}{\text{ has a }} \overset{Cm}{\text{ new }} \overset{G}{\text{ chord.}}$

Replaying can be used in combination with automatic transposition to produce modulated verses. See §10 for an example.

`\memorize` By default, chords are replayed from the current song's first verse, but you can replay the chords of a different verse or chorus by saying `\memorize` at the beginning of any verse or chorus whose chords you want to later replay. Subsequent verses or choruses that use ^ replay chords from the most recently memorized verse or chorus.

Selective Memorization. It is also possible to inject unmemorized chords into a memorized verse so that they are not later replayed. To suppress memorization of a chord, begin the chord's name with a hat symbol. For example,

```
\beginverse\memorize
The \Gthird \Cchord will \[^Cm]not be re\Gplayed.
\endverse
\beginverse
When ^replaying, the ^unmemorized chord is ^skipped.
\endverse
```

produces

$\overset{G}{\text{The}} \overset{C}{\text{third}} \overset{Cm}{\text{chord}} \overset{G}{\text{will not be replayed.}}$

$\overset{G}{\text{When}} \overset{C}{\text{replaying, the}} \overset{G}{\text{unmemorized chord is skipped.}}$

This is useful when the first verse of a song has something unique, like an intro that won't be repeated in subsequent verses, but has other chords that you wish to replay.

Memorizing Multiple Chord Sequences. By default, the `songs` package only memorizes one sequence of chords at a time and `^` replays chords from that most recently memorized sequence. However, you can memorize and replay multiple independent sequences using the macros described in the following paragraphs.

`\newchords` Memorized or replayed chord sequences are stored in chord-replay registers. To declare a new chord-replay register, type

`\newchords{<regname>}`

where `<regname>` is any unique alphabetic name.

Once you've declared a register, you can memorize into that register by providing the `<regname>` as an optional argument to `\memorize`:

`\memorize[<regname>]`

Memorizing into a non-empty register replaces the contents of that register with the new chord sequence.

`\replay` To replay chord from a particular register, type

`\replay[<regname>]`

Subsequent uses of `^` reproduce chords from the sequence stored in register `<regname>`.

Register contents are global, so you can memorize a chord sequence from one song and replay it in others. You can also use `\replay` multiple times in the same verse or chorus to replay a sequence more than once.

7.5 Line and Column Breaks

`\brk` **Line Breaking.** To cause a long line of lyrics to be broken in a particular place, put the `\brk` macro at that point in the line. This does not affect lines short enough to fit without breaking. For example,

```
\beginverse
This is a \brk short line.
But this is a particularly long line of lyrics \brk that will
need to be wrapped.
\endverse
```

produces

This is a short line.
 But this is a particularly long line of lyrics
 that will need to be wrapped.

Column Breaks Within Songs. To suggest a column break within a verse or chorus too long to fit in a single column, use `\brk` on a line by itself. If there are no `\brk` lines in a long verse, it is broken somewhere that a line does not wrap. (A wrapped line is never divided by a column break.) If there are no `\brk` lines in a long chorus, it overflows the column, yielding an overfull vbox warning.

`\nextcol` **Column Breaks Between Songs.** To force a column break between songs, use `\nextcol`, `\brk`, `\sclearpage`, or `\scleardpage` between songs. The `\nextcol` macro ends the column by leaving blank space at the bottom. The `\brk` macro ends the current column in lyric books by stretching the preceeding text so that the column ends flush with the bottom of the page. (In non-lyric books `\brk` is identical to `\nextcol`.) The `\sclearpage` macro is like `\nextcol` except that it shifts to the next blank page if the current page is nonempty. The `\scleardpage` macro is like `\sclearpage` except that it shifts to the next blank even-numbered page in two-sided documents. Column breaks usually need to be in different places in different book types. To achieve this, use a conditional block from §11.4. For example,

```
\ifchorded\else\ifslides\else\brk\fi\fi
```

forces a column break only in lyric books but does not affect chord books or books of overhead slides.

When a partial list of songs is being extracted with `\includeonlysongs`, `\brk`, `\nextcol`, `\clearpage`, and `\cleardpage` macros between songs must be followed by a star to have any effect. To force a column-break at a specific point in a partial book, add the word `nextcol`, `brk`, `clearpage`, or `cleardpage` at the corresponding point in the argument to `\includeonlysongs`.

7.6 Echoes and Repeats

`\echo` **Echo Parts.** To typeset an echo part, use `\echo{lyrics and chords}`. Echo parts are parenthesized and italicized. For example,

```
Alle\{G\}luia! \echo{Alle\{A\}luia!} produces Alleluia! (GAlleluia!A)
```

`\rep` **Repeated Lines.** To indicate that a line should be sung multiple times by all singers, put `\rep{n}` at the end of the line. For example,

```
Alleluia! \rep{4} produces Alleluia! (×4)
```

`\lrep` `\rrep` To indicate exactly where repeated parts begin and end, use `\lrep` and `\rrep` to create begin- and end-repeat signs. For example,

`\lrep \[G]Alleluia!\rrep \rep{4}` produces $\| \begin{array}{c} G \\ \hline \end{array} \| \text{Alleluia!} \| (\times 4)$

7.7 Measure Bars

`\measurebar` Measure bars can be added to chord books in order to help musicians keep time
`|` when playing unfamiliar songs. To insert a measure bar, type either `\measurebar`
or type the vertical pipe symbol (“|”). For example,

`Alle|\[G]luia` produces $\text{Alleluia} \begin{array}{c} | \\ G \end{array}$

In order for measure bars to be displayed, the `showmeasures` option must be enabled. Measure bars are only displayed by default in chord books.

`\meter` The first measure bar in a song has meter numbers placed above it to indicate the time signature of the piece. By default, these numbers are 4/4, denoting four quarter notes per measure. To change the default, type `\meter{<n>}{<d>}` somewhere after the `\beginsong` line of the song but before the first measure bar, to declare a time signature of $\langle n \rangle / \langle d \rangle$ th notes per measure.

`\mbar` You can also change meters mid-song either by using `\meter` in the middle of the song or by typing `\mbar{<n>}{<d>}` to produce a measure bar with a time signature of $\langle n \rangle / \langle d \rangle$. For example,

```
\meter{6}{8}
\beginverse
|Sing to the |heavens, ye \mbar{4}{4}saints of |old!
\endverse
```

produces

$\begin{array}{c} 6 \\ | \end{array} \text{Sing to the } \begin{array}{c} | \end{array} \text{heavens, ye } \begin{array}{c} 4 \\ | \end{array} \text{saints of } \begin{array}{c} | \end{array} \text{old!}$

7.8 Textual Notes

`\textnote` Aside from verses and choruses, songs can also contain textual notes that provide
`\musicnote` instructions to singers and musicians. To create a textual note that is displayed
in both lyric books and chord books, use:

```
\textnote{<text>}
```

To create a textual note that is displayed only in chord books, use:

```
\musicnote{<text>}
```

Both of these create a shaded box containing $\langle \text{text} \rangle$. For example,

```
\textnote{Sing as a two-part round.}
```

produces

Sing as a two-part round.

Textual notes can be placed anywhere within a song, either within verses and choruses or between them.

`\capo` **Guitar Capos.** One special kind of textual note suggests to guitarists a fret on which they should put their capos. Macro `\capo{<n>}` should be used for this purpose. It normally has the same effect as `\musicnote{capo <n>}`; however, if the `transposecapos` option is active then it instead has the effect of `\transpose{<n>}`. See §10 for more information on automatic chord transposition.

7.9 Index Entries

Every song automatically gets entries in the current section’s title index(es). However, you can also add extra index entries for a song to any index.

`index=` **Indexing Lyrics.** For example, title indexes often have entries for memorable lines of lyrics in a song in addition to the song’s title. You can add an index entry for the current song to the section’s title index(es) by adding `index={<lyrics>}` to the song’s `\beginsong` line. For example,

```
\beginsong{Doxology}
[index={Praise God from Whom all blessings flow}]
```

causes the song to be indexed both as “*Doxology*” and as “Praise God from Whom all blessings flow” in the section’s title index(es). You can use `index=` multiple times in a `\beginsong` line to produce multiple additional index entries. Index entries produced with `index={<lyrics>}` are typeset in an upright font instead of in italics to distinguish them from song titles.

`ititle=` **Indexing Extra Song Titles.** To add a regular index entry typeset in italics to the title index(es), use:

```
ititle={<title>}
```

in the `\beginsong` line instead. Like `index=` keyvals, `ititle=` can be used multiple times to produce multiple additional index entries.

`\indexentry` You can also create index entries by saying `\indexentry[<indexes>]{<lyrics>}`
`\indextitleentry` (which creates an entry like `index=`) or `\indextitleentry[<indexes>]{<title>}`
(which creates an entry like `ititle=`). These two macros can be used anywhere between the song’s `\beginsong` and `\endsong` lines, and can be used multiple times to produce multiple entries. If specified, `<indexes>` is a comma-separated list of the identifiers of indexes to which the entry should be added. Otherwise the new entry is added to all of the title indexes for the current `songs` environment.

7.10 Chords in Ligatures

This subsection covers an advanced topic and can probably be skipped by those creating song books for non-professional use.

The `\[` macro is the normal means by which chords should be inserted into a song; however, a special case occurs when a chord falls within a ligature. Ligatures are combinations of letters or symbols that \TeX normally typesets as a single font character so as to produce cleaner-looking output. The only ligatures in English are: `ff`, `fi`, `fl`, `ffi`, and `ffl`. Other languages have additional ligatures like `æ` and `œ`. Notice that in each of these cases, the letters are “squished” together to form a single composite symbol.

`\ch` When a chord macro falls inside a ligature, \LaTeX fails to compact the ligature into a single font character even in non-chorded versions of the book. To avoid this minor typographical error, use the `\ch` macro to typeset the chord:

`\ch{<chord>}{<pre>}{<post>}{<full>}`

where `<chord>` is the chord text, `<pre>` is the text to appear before the hyphen if the ligature is broken by auto-hyphenation, `<post>` is the text to appear after the hyphen if the ligature is broken by auto-hyphenation, and `<full>` is the full ligature if it is not broken by hyphenation. For example, to correctly typeset `\[Gsus4]dif\[G]ficult`, in which the *G* chord falls in the middle of the “ffi” ligature, one should use:

`di\ch{G}{f}{fi}{ffi}cult` produces *difficult*^{*G*}

This causes the “ffi” ligature to appear intact yet still correctly places the *G* chord over the second *f*. To use the `\ch` macro with a replayed chord name (see §7.4), use `^` as the `<chord>`.

`\mch` The `\mch` macro is exactly like the `\ch` macro except that it also places a measure bar into the ligature along with the chord. For example,

`di\mch{G}{f}{fi}{ffi}cult` produces *difficult*^{*G*}

places both a measure bar and a *G* chord after the first “f” in “difficult”, yet correctly produces an unbroken “ffi” ligature in copies of the book in which measure bars are not displayed.

In the unusual case that a meter change is required within a ligature, this can be achieved with a construction like:

`\meter{6}{8}di\mch{G}{f}{fi}{ffi}cult` produces *difficult*^{*G*}

The `\meter` macro sets the new time signature, which appears above the next measure bar—in this case the measure bar produced by the `\mch` macro.

Chords and measure bars produced with `^` or `|` are safe to use in ligatures. Thus, `dif|^ficult` requires no special treatment; it leaves the “ffi” ligature intact when measure bars are not being displayed.

8 Between Songs

Never put any material directly into the top level of a `songs` environment. Doing so will disrupt the page-builder, usually producing strange page breaks and blank pages. To safely put material between songs, use one of the environments described in this section.

8.1 Intersong Displays

intersong To put column-width material between the songs in a `songs` environment, use an `intersong` environment:

```
\begin{intersong}
:
\end{intersong}
```

Material contributed in an `intersong` environment is subject to the same column-breaking rules as songs (see §11.5), but all other formatting is up to you. By default, L^AT_EX inserts interline glue below the last line of an `intersong` environment. To suppress this, end the `intersong` content with `\par\nointerlineskip`.

intersong* To instead put page-width material above a song, use an `intersong*` environment:

```
\begin{intersong*}
:
\end{intersong*}
```

This starts a new page if the current page already has column-width material in it.

songgroup By default, all intersong displays are omitted when generating a partial book with `\includeonlysongs`. You can force them to be included whenever a particular song is included by using a `songgroup` environment:

```
\begin{songgroup}
:
\end{songgroup}
```

Each `songgroup` environment may include any number of `intersong`, `intersong*`, or scripture quotations (see §8.2), but must include exactly one song. When using `\includeonlysongs`, the entire group is included in the book if the enclosed song is included; otherwise the entire group is omitted.

8.2 Scripture Quotations

\beginscripture **Starting a Scripture Quotation.** A special form of intersong block typesets a scripture quotation. Scripture quotations begin and end with

\endscripture

```

\beginscripture{<ref>}
:
\endscripture

```

where $\langle ref \rangle$ is a scripture reference that is typeset at the end of the quotation. The $\langle ref \rangle$ argument should conform to the same syntax rules as for the $\langle ref \rangle$ arguments passed to `\beginsong` macros (see §7).

The text of the scripture quotation between the `\beginscripture` and `\endscripture` lines are parsed in normal paragraph mode. For example:

```

\beginscripture{James 5:13}
Is any one of you in trouble? He should pray. Is anyone happy?
Let him sing songs of praise.
\endscripture

```

produces

*Is any one of you in trouble? He should
pray. Is anyone happy? Let him sing
songs of praise.* James 5:13

\Acolon Tuplets. To typeset biblical poetry the way it appears in most bibles, begin each line with either `\Acolon` or `\Bcolon`. A-colons are typeset flush with the left margin, while B-colons are indented. Any lines too long to fit are wrapped with double-width hanging indentation. For example,

```

\beginscripture{Psalm 1:1}
\Acolon Blessed is the man
\Bcolon who does not walk in the counsel of the wicked
\Acolon or stand in the way of sinners
\Bcolon or sit in the seat of mockers.
\endscripture

```

produces

*Blessed is the man
who does not walk in the counsel
of the wicked
or stand in the way of sinners
or sit in the seat of mockers.* Psalm 1:1

\strophe Stanzas. Biblical poetry is often grouped into stanzas or “strophes”, each of which is separated from the next by a small vertical space. You can create that vertical space by typing `\strophe`. For example,

```

\beginscripture{Psalm 88:2-3}
\Acolon May my prayer come before you;
\Bcolon turn your ear to my cry.
\strophe
\Acolon For my soul is full of trouble
\Bcolon and my life draws near the grave.
\endscripture

```

produces

*May my prayer come before you;
turn your ear to my cry.*

*For my soul is full of trouble
and my life draws near the grave.*

Psalm 88:2-3

`\scripindent` **Indented Blocks.** Some bible passages, such as those that mix prose and poetry, contain indented blocks of text. You can increase the indentation level within a scripture quotation by using `\scripindent` and decrease it by using `\scripoutdent`. For example,

```

\beginscripture{Hebrews 10:17-18}
Then he adds:
\scripindent
\Acolon ‘‘Their sins and lawless acts
\Bcolon I will remember no more.’’
\scripoutdent
And where these have been forgiven, there is no longer any
sacrifice for sin.
\endscripture

```

produces

Then he adds:

*“Their sins and lawless acts
I will remember no more.”*

*And where these have been forgiven,
there is no longer any sacrifice for sin.*

Hebrews 10:17-18

9 Guitar Tablatures

`\gtab` Guitar tablature diagrams can be created by using the construct

```

\gtab{⟨chord⟩}{⟨fret⟩}:⟨strings⟩:⟨fingering⟩}

```

where the $\langle fret \rangle$ and $\langle fingering \rangle$ parts are both optional (and you may omit any colon that borders an omitted argument).

$\langle chord \rangle$ is a chord name to be placed above the diagram.

$\langle fret \rangle$ is an optional digit (any number from 2 to 9) placed to the left of the diagram.

$\langle strings \rangle$ should be a series of symbols, one for each string of the guitar from lowest pitch to highest. Each symbol should be one of: **X** if that string is not to be played, 0 (zero or the letter O) if that string is to be played open, or one of 1 through 9 if that string is to be played on the given numbered fret.

$\langle fingering \rangle$ is an optional series of digits, one for each string of the guitar from lowest pitch to highest. Each digit should be one of: 0 if no fingering information is to be displayed for that string (e.g., if the string is not being played or is being played open), or one of 1 through 4 to indicate that the given numbered finger is to be used to hold down that string.

Here are some examples to illustrate:

<code>\gtab{A}{X02220:001230}</code>	<i>produces</i>	
<code>\gtab{C#sus4}{4:XX3341}</code>	<i>produces</i>	
<code>\gtab{B&}{X13331}</code>	<i>produces</i>	

`\minfrets` By default, tablature diagrams always consist of at least 4 fret rows (more if the $\langle strings \rangle$ argument contains a number larger than 4). To change the minimum number of fret rows, change the value of `\minfrets`. For example, typing

`\minfrets=1`

causes tablature diagrams to have only as many rows as are required to accommodate the largest digit appearing in the $\langle strings \rangle$ argument.

10 Automatic Transposition

`\transpose` You can automatically transpose some or all of the chords in a song up by $\langle n \rangle$ half-steps by adding the line

`\transpose{ $\langle n \rangle$ }`

somewhere between the song's `\beginsong` line and the first chord to be transposed. For example, if a song's first chord is `\[D]`, and the line `\transpose{2}` appears before it, then the chord appears as an *E* in the resulting document. Specifying a negative number for $\langle n \rangle$ transposes subsequent chords down instead of up.

The `\transpose` macro affects all chords appearing after it until the `\endsong` line. If two `\transpose` macros appear in the same song, their effects are cumulative.

When the `transposecapos` option is active, the `\capo` macro acts like `\transpose`. See §7.8 for more information.

`\preferflats`
`\prefersharp`

Enharmonics. When using `\transpose` to automatically transpose the chords of a song, the `songs` package code chooses between enharmonically equivalent names for “black key” notes based on the first chord of the song. For example, if `\transpose{1}` is used, and if the first chord of the song is an *E*, then all *A* chords that appear in the song are transcribed as *B^b* chords rather than *A[#]* chords, since the key of *F*-major (*E* transposed up by one half-step) has a flatted key signature. Usually this guess produces correct results, but if not, you can use either `\preferflats` or `\prefersharp` after the `\transpose` line to force all transcription to use flatted names or sharped names respectively, when resolving enharmonic equivalents.

Modulated Verses. Automatic transposition can be used in conjunction with chord-replaying (see §7.3) to produce modulated verses. For example,

```
\beginverse\memorize
\[F#]This is a \[B/F#]memorized \[F#]verse. \[E&7]
\endverse
\transpose{2}
\beginverse
^This verse is ^modulated up two ^half-steps.
\endverse
```

produces

$$\begin{array}{l} F^{\#} \quad B/F^{\#} \quad F^{\#} \quad E^b7 \\ \text{This is a memorized verse.} \\ A^b \quad D^b/A^b \quad A^b \\ \text{This verse is modulated up two half-steps.} \end{array}$$

`\trchordformat`

Both Keys. By default, when chords are automatically transposed using `\transpose`, only the transposed chords are printed. However, in some cases you may wish to print the old chords and the transposed chords together so that musicians playing transposing and non-transposing instruments can play from the same piece of music. This can be achieved by redefining the `\trchordformat`

macro, which receives two arguments—the original chord name and the transposed chord name, respectively. For example, to print the old chord above the new chord above each lyric, define

```
\renewcommand{\trchordformat}[2]{\vbox{\hbox{#1}\hbox{#2}}}
```

`\solfedge` **Changing Note Names.** In many countries it is common to use the solfedge names for the notes of the scale (*LA, SI, DO, RE, MI, FA, SOL*) instead of the alphabetic names (*A, B, C, D, E, F, G*). By default, the transposition logic only understands alphabetic names, but you can tell it to look for solfedge names by typing `\solfedge`. To return to alphabetic names, type `\alphascale`.

`\notenames` You can use other note names as well. To define your own note names, type

```
\notenames{<nameA>}{<nameB>}\dots{<nameG>}
```

where each of `<nameA>` through `<nameG>` must consist entirely of a sequence of one or more *uppercase* letters. For example, some solfedge musicians use *TI* instead of *SI* for the second note of the scale. To automatically transpose such music, use:

```
\notenames{LA}{TI}{DO}{RE}{MI}{FA}{SOL}
```

`\notenamesin` The **songs** package can also automatically convert one set of note names to another. For example, suppose you have a large song book in which chords have been typed using alphabetic note names, but you wish to produce a book that uses the equivalent solfedge names. You could achieve this by using the `\notenamesin` macro to tell the **songs** package which note names you typed in the input file, and then using `\notenamesout` to tell the **songs** package how you want it to typeset each note name in the output file. The final code looks like this:

```
\notenamesin{A}{B}{C}{D}{E}{F}{G}
\notenamesout{LA}{SI}{DO}{RE}{MI}{FA}{SOL}
```

The syntaxes of `\notenamesin` and `\notenamesout` are identical to that of `\notenames` (see above), except that the arguments of `\notenamesout` can consist of any L^AT_EX code that is legal in horizontal mode, not just uppercase letters.

To stop converting between note names, use `\alphascale`, `\solfedge`, or `\notenames` to reset all note names back to identical input and output scales.

`\transposehere` **Transposing Chords In Macros.** The automatic transposition logic won't find chord names that are hidden inside macro bodies. For example, if you abbreviate a chord by typing,

```
\newcommand{\mychord}{F\shrp sus4/C\shrp}
\transpose{4}
\[ \mychord ]
```

then the `\transpose` macro fails to transpose it; the resulting chord is still an *F#sus4/C#* chord. To fix the problem, you can use `\transposehere` in your macros to explicitly invoke the transposition logic on chord names embedded in macro bodies. The above example could be corrected by instead defining:

`\newcommand{\mychord}{\transposehere{F\shrp sus4/C\shrp}}`

`\notrans` Transposition can be suppressed within material that would otherwise be transposed by using the `\notrans` macro. For example, writing

`\transposehere{G = \notrans{G}}`

would typeset a transposed *G* followed by a non-transposed *G* chord. This does not suppress note name conversion (see `\notenames`). To suppress both transposition and note name conversion, just use braces (e.g., `{G}` instead of `\notrans{G}`).

`\gtabtrans` **Transposing Guitar Tablatures.** The songs package cannot automatically transpose tablature diagrams (see §9). Therefore, when automatic transposition is taking place, only the chord names of `\gtab` macros are displayed (and transposed); the diagrams are omitted. To change this default, redefine the `\gtabtrans` macro, whose two arguments are the two arguments to `\gtab`. For example, to display original tablatures without transposing them even when transposition has been turned on, write

`\renewcommand{\gtabtrans}[2]{\gtab{\notrans{#1}}{#2}}`

To transpose the chord name but not the diagram under it, replace `\notrans{#1}` with simply `#1` in the above. To restore the default behavior, write

`\renewcommand{\gtabtrans}[2]{\transposehere{#1}}`

11 Customizing the Book

11.1 Song and Verse Numbering

`songnum` **Song Numbering.** The `songnum` counter defines the next song's number. It is set to 1 at the beginning of a `songs` environment and is increased by 1 after each `\endsong`. It can be redefined anywhere except within a song. For example,

`\setcounter{songnum}{3}`

sets the next song's number to be 3.

`\thesongnum` You can change the song numbering style for a song section by redefining `\thesongnum`. For example, to cause songs to be numbered A1, A2, etc., in the current song section, type

`\renewcommand{\thesongnum}{A\arabic{songnum}}`

The expansion of `\thesongnum` must always produce plain text with no font formatting or unexpandable macro tokens, since its text is exported to auxiliary index generation files where it is sorted.

`\printsongnum` To change the formatting of song numbers as they appear at the beginning of each song, redefine the `\printsongnum` macro, which expects the text yielded by `\thesongnum` as its only argument. For example, to typeset song numbers in italics atop each song, define

	<code>\renewcommand{\printsongnum}[1]{\it\LARGE#1}</code>
<code>\songnumwidth</code>	The <code>\songnumwidth</code> length defines the width of the shaded boxes that contain song numbers at the beginning of each song. For example, to make each such box 2 centimeters wide, you could define <code>\setlength{\songnumwidth}{2cm}</code>
<code>\nosongnumbers</code>	If <code>\songnumwidth</code> is set to zero, song numbers are not shown at all. To turn off song numbering entirely, type <code>\nosongnumbers</code> . This inhibits the display of the song number atop each song (but song numbers are still be displayed elsewhere, such as in indexes). The same effect can be achieved by setting <code>\songnumwidth</code> to zero.
<code>versenum</code>	Verse Numbering. The <code>versenum</code> counter defines the next verse's number. It is set to 1 after each <code>\beginsong</code> line and is increased by 1 after each <code>\endverse</code> (except if the verse begins with <code>\beginverse*</code>). The <code>versenum</code> counter can be redefined anywhere within a song. For example, <code>\setcounter{versenum}{3}</code> sets the next verse's number to be 3.
<code>\theversenum</code>	You can change the verse numbering style by redefining <code>\theversenum</code> . For example, to cause verses to be numbered in uppercase roman numerals, define <code>\renewcommand{\theversenum}{\Roman{versenum}}</code>
<code>\printversenum</code>	To change the formatting of verse numbers as they appear at the beginning of each verse, redefine the <code>\printversenum</code> macro, which expects the text yielded by <code>\theversenum</code> as its only argument. For example, to typeset verse numbers in italics, define <code>\renewcommand{\printversenum}[1]{\it\LARGE#1.\ }</code>
<code>\versenumwidth</code>	The <code>\versenumwidth</code> length defines the horizontal space reserved for verse numbers to the left of each verse text. Verse text is shifted right by this amount. For example, to reserve half a centimeter of space for verse numbers, define <code>\setlength{\versenumwidth}{0.5cm}</code> Verse numbers whose widths exceed <code>\versenumwidth</code> indent the first line of the verse an additional amount to make room, but subsequent lines of the verse are only indented by <code>\versenumwidth</code> .
<code>\noversenumbers</code>	To turn off verse numbering entirely, use <code>\noversenumbers</code> . This is equivalent to saying <code>\renewcommand{\printversenum}[1]{}</code> <code>\setlength{\versenumwidth}{0pt}</code>
<code>\placeversenum</code>	The horizontal placement of verse numbers within the first line of each verse is controlled by the <code>\placeversenum</code> macro. By default, each verse number is placed flush-left. Authors interested in changing the placement of verse numbers should consult §16.2 of the implementation section for more information on this macro.

11.2 Song Appearance

<code>\lyricfont</code>	<p>Font Selection. By default, lyrics are typeset using the document-default font (<code>\normalfont</code>) and with the document-default point size (<code>\normalsize</code>). You can change these defaults by redefining <code>\lyricfont</code>. For example, to cause lyrics to be typeset in small sans serif font, you could define</p> <pre>\renewcommand{\lyricfont}{\sffamily\small}</pre>
<code>\stitlefont</code>	<p>Song titles are typeset in a sans-serif, slanted font by default (sans-serif, upright if producing slides). You can change this default by redefining <code>\stitlefont</code>. For example, to cause titles to be typeset in a roman font, you could define</p> <pre>\renewcommand{\stitlefont}{\rmfont\Large}</pre>
<code>\versefont</code> <code>\chorusfont</code> <code>\notefont</code>	<p>You can apply additional font changes to verses, choruses, and textual notes produced with <code>\textnote</code> and <code>\musicnote</code> by redefining <code>\versefont</code>, <code>\chorusfont</code>, and <code>\notefont</code>, respectively. For example, to typeset choruses in italics, you could define</p> <pre>\renewcommand{\chorusfont}{\it}</pre>
<code>\notebgcolor</code> <code>\numbgcolor</code>	<p>The colors of shaded boxes containing textual notes and song numbers can be changed by redefining the <code>\notebgcolor</code> and <code>\numbgcolor</code> macros. For example:</p> <pre>\renewcommand{\notebgcolor}{red}</pre>
<code>\printchord</code>	<p>By default, chords are typeset in sans serif oblique (slanted) font. You can customize chord appearance by redefining <code>\printchord</code>, which accepts the chord text as its argument. For example, to cause chords to be printed in roman boldface font, you could define</p> <pre>\renewcommand{\printchord}[1]{\rmfamily\bf#1}</pre>
<code>\sharpsymbol</code> <code>\flatsymbol</code>	<p>Accidental Symbols. By default, sharp and flat symbols are typeset using L^AT_EX's <code>\#</code> (<code>#</code>) and <code>\flat</code> (<code>b</code>) macros. Users can change this by redefining <code>\sharpsymbol</code> and <code>\flatsymbol</code>. For example, to use <code>\sharp</code> (<code>#</code>) instead of <code>#</code>, one could redefine <code>\sharpsymbol</code> as follows.</p> <pre>\renewcommand{\sharpsymbol}{\ensuremath{\^{\sharp}}}</pre>
<code>\everyverse</code> <code>\everychorus</code>	<p>Verse and Chorus Titles. The <code>\everyverse</code> macro is executed at the beginning of each verse, and <code>\everychorus</code> is executed at the beginning of each chorus. Thus, to begin each chorus with the word “Chorus:” one could type,</p> <pre>\renewcommand{\everychorus}{\textnote{Chorus:}}</pre>

`\versesep` **Spacing Options.** The vertical distance between song verses and song choruses is defined by the skip register `\versesep`. For example, to put 12 points of space between each pair of verses and choruses, with a flexibility of plus or minus 2 points, you could define

```
\versesep=12pt plus 2pt minus 2pt
```

`\afterpreludeskip` The vertical distance between the song's body and its prelude and postlude
`\beforepostludeskip` material is controlled by skips `\afterpreludeskip` and `\beforepostludeskip`. This glue can be made stretchable for centering effects. For example, to cause each song body to be centered on the page with one song per page, you could write:

```
\songcolumns{1}  
\spenalty=-10000  
\afterpreludeskip=2pt plus 1fil  
\beforepostludeskip=2pt plus 1fil
```

`\baselineadj` The vertical distance between the baselines of consecutive lines of lyrics is computed by the `songs` package based on several factors including the lyric font size, the chord font size (if in `chorded` mode), and whether `slides` mode is currently active. You can adjust the results of this computation by redefining skip register `\baselineadj`. For example, to reduce the natural distance between baselines by 1 point but allow an additional 1 point of stretching when attempting to balance columns, you could define

```
\baselineadj=-1pt plus 1pt minus 0pt
```

`\clineparams` To change the vertical distance between chords and the lyrics below them, redefine the `\clineparams` macro with a definition that adjusts the L^AT_EX parameters `\baselineskip`, `\lineskiplimit`, and `\lineskip`. For example, to cause the baselines of chords and their lyrics to be 12 points apart with at least 1 point of space between the bottom of the chord and the top of the lyric, you could write:

```
\renewcommand{\clineparams}{  
  \baselineskip=12pt  
  \lineskiplimit=1pt  
  \lineskip=1pt  
}
```

`\cbarwidth` The width of the vertical line that appears to the left of choruses is controlled by the `\cbarwidth` length. To eliminate the line entirely (and the spacing around it), you can set `\cbarwidth` to 0pt:

```
\setlength{\cbarwidth}{0pt}
```

`\sbarheight` The height of the horizontal line that appears between each pair of songs is controlled by the `\sbarheight` length. To eliminate the line entirely (and the spacing around it), you can set `\sbarheight` to 0pt:

```
\setlength{\sbarheight}{0pt}
```

Song Top and Bottom Material. You can adjust the header and footer material that precedes and concludes each song by redefining `\extendprelude` and `\extendpostlude`.

`\extendprelude` By default, `\extendprelude` displays the song’s authors and scripture references using the macros `\showauthors` and `\showrefs`. The following definition changes it to also print copyright info:

```
\renewcommand{\extendprelude}{
  \showrefs\showauthors
  {\bfseries\songcopyright\par}
}
```

`\extendpostlude` By default, `\extendpostlude` prints the song’s copyright and licensing information as a single paragraph using `\songcopyright` and `\songlicense`. The following definition changes it to also print the words “Used with permission” at the end of every song’s footer information:

```
\renewcommand{\extendpostlude}{
  \songcopyright\ \songlicense\unskip
  \ Used with permission.
}
```

In general, any macro documented in §12 can be used in `\extendprelude` and `\extendpostlude` to print song information, such as `\songauthors`, `\songrefs`, `\songcopyright`, and `\songlicense`. For convenience, the `\showauthors` and `\showrefs` macros display author and scripture reference information as a preformatted paragraph the way it appears in the default song header blocks.

See §11.8 for how to define new `\beginsong` keyvals and use them in `\extendprelude`.

`\makeprelude` For complete control over the appearance of the header and footer material
`\makepostlude` that precedes and concludes each song, you can redefine the macros `\makeprelude` and `\makepostlude`. When typesetting a song, the **songs** package code invokes both of these macros once (after processing all the material between the `\beginsong` and `\endsong` lines), placing the results within vboxes. The resulting vboxes are placed atop and below the song content. By default, `\makeprelude` displays the song’s titles, authors, and scripture references to the right of a shaded box containing the song’s number; and `\makepostlude` displays the song’s copyright and licensing information in fine print.

`\vvpenalty` **Page- and Column-breaking.** Page-breaking and column-breaking within
`\ccpenalty` songs that are too large to fit in a single column/page is influenced by the values of
`\vcpenalty` several penalties. Penalties of value `\interlinepenalty` are inserted between con-
`\cvpenalty` secutive lines of each verse and chorus; penalties of value `\vvpenalty`, `\ccpenalty`,
`\brkpenalty` `\vcpenalty`, and `\cvpenalty` are inserted into each song between consecutive
verses, between consecutive choruses, after a verse followed by a chorus, and after
a chorus followed by a verse, respectively; and penalties of value `\brkpenalty` are
inserted wherever `\brk` is used on a line by itself. The higher the penalty, the
less likely T_EX is to place a page- or column-break at that site. If any are set to

−10000 or lower, breaks are forced there. By default, `\interlinepenalty` is set to 1000 and the rest are set to 200 so that breaks between verses and choruses are preferred over breaks within choruses and verses, but are not forced.

`\sepverses` Saying `\sepverses` sets all of the above penalties to −10000 except for `\ccpenalty` which is set to 100. This is useful in `slides` mode because it forces each verse and chorus to be typeset on a separate slide, except for consecutive choruses, which remain together when possible. (This default reflects an expectation that consecutive choruses typically consist of a pre-chorus and chorus that are always sung together.)

These defaults can be changed by changing the relevant penalty register directly. For example, to force a page- or column-break between consecutive choruses, type

```
\ccpenalty=-10000
```

`\versejustify` **Text Justification.** To cause verse or chorus text to be justified flush-left or centered, set `\versejustify` or `\chorusjustify` to `\justifyleft` or `\justifycenter`, respectively. For example, to cause choruses to be centered, one could type:

```
\renewcommand{\chorusjustify}{\justifycenter}
```

`\notejustify` Justification of textual notes too long to fit on a single line is controlled by the `\notejustify` macro. By default, it sets up an environment that fully justifies the note (i.e., all but the last line of each paragraph extends all the way from the left to the right margin). Authors interested in changing this behavior should consult §16.2 of the implementation section for more information about this macro.

`\placernote` A textual note that is shorter than a single line is placed flush-left by default, or is centered when in slides mode. This placement of textual notes is controlled by `\placernote`. Authors interested in changing this behavior should consult §16.2 of the implementation section for more information about this macro.

11.3 Scripture Appearance

`\scripturefont` By default, scripture quotations are typeset in Zaph Chancery font with the document-default point size (`\normalsize`). You can change these defaults by redefining `\scripturefont`. For example, to cause scripture quotations to be typeset in sans serif italics, define:

```
\renewcommand{\scripturefont}{\sffamily\it}
```

`\printscrcite` By default, the citation at the end of a scripture quotation is typeset in sans serif font at the document-default point size (`\normalsize`). You can customize the appearance of the citation by redefining `\printscrcite`, which accepts the citation text as its argument. For example, to cause citations to be printed in roman italics font, define:

```
\renewcommand{\printscrcite}[1]{\rmfamily\it#1}
```

Type	Processed only if...
<code>chorded</code>	the <code>chorded</code> option is active
<code>lyric</code>	the <code>chorded</code> option is not active
<code>slides</code>	the <code>slides</code> option is active
<code>partiallist</code>	the <code>\includeonlysongs</code> macro is being used to extract a partial list of songs
<code>songindexes</code>	the <code>noindexes</code> option is not active
<code>measures</code>	the <code>nomeasures</code> option is not active
<code>rawtext</code>	the <code>rawtext</code> option is active
<code>transcapos</code>	the <code>transposecapos</code> option is active
<code>nolyrics</code>	the <code>\nolyrics</code> macro is in effect
<code>pagepreludes</code>	the <code>\pagepreludes</code> macro is in effect
<code>vnumbered</code>	the current verse is numbered (i.e., it was started with <code>\beginverse</code> instead of <code>\beginverse*</code>)

Table 1: Conditional macros

11.4 Conditional Blocks

Conditional macros allow certain material to be included in some books but not others. For example, a musician’s chord book might include extra verses with alternate chordings.

`\if...` A conditional block begins with a macro named `\if<type>`, where *<type>* is one of the types listed in the first column of Table 1. The conditional block concludes with the macro `\fi`. Between the `\if<type>` and the `\fi` may also appear an `\else`. For example, in the construction

```

\ifchorded
  <A>
\else
  <B>
\fi

```

material *<A>* is only included if the `chorded` option is active, and material ** is only included if the `chorded` option is not active.

11.5 Page Layout

`\songcolumns` The number of columns per page can be set with `\songcolumns`. For example, to create 3 columns per page, write

```
\songcolumns{3}
```

The number of columns should only be changed outside of `songs` environments.

Setting the number of columns to zero disables the page-building algorithm entirely. This can be useful if you want to use an external package, such as `multicol` or L^AT_EX's built-in `\twocolumn` macro, to build pages. For example, the following sets up an environment that is suitable for a lyric book that uses `\twocolumn`:

```
\songcolumns{0}
\flushbottom
\twocolumn[\LARGE\centering My Songs]
\begin{songs}{}
:
\end{songs}
```

When disabling the page-builder, please note the following potential issues:

- The `\repchoruses` feature does not work when the page-builder is disabled because the page-builder is responsible for inserting repeated choruses as new columns are formed.
- External page-building packages tend to allow column- and page-breaks within songs because they have no mechanism for moving an entire song to the next column or page to avoid such a break (see `\songpos` below).
- Indexes produced with `\showindex` are typeset to the width of the enclosing environment. Thus, you should be sure to reset L^AT_EX back to one column (via `\onecolumn`) before executing `\showindex`.

<code>\pagepreludes</code>	Song preludes (i.e., the material atop each song, including the title) are typeset by default at column width. Writing <code>\pagepreludes</code> typesets subsequent preludes at page width atop fresh pages, with the rest of the song in multiple columns beneath its title.
<code>\columnsep</code>	The horizontal distance between consecutive columns is controlled by the <code>\columnsep</code> dimension. For example, to separate columns by 1 centimeter of space, write <code>\columnsep=1cm</code>
<code>\colbotglue</code>	When L ^A T _E X ends each column it inserts glue equal to <code>\colbotglue</code> . In lyric books this macro is set to <code>0pt</code> so that each column ends flush with the bottom of the page. In other books that have ragged bottoms, it is set to stretchable glue so that columns end at whatever vertical position is convenient. The recommended setting for typesetting columns with ragged bottoms is: <code>\renewcommand{\colbotglue}{0pt plus .5\textheight minus 0pt}</code>
<code>\lastcolglue</code>	The last column in a <code>songs</code> environment gets <code>\lastcolglue</code> appended to it instead. By default it is infinitely stretchable so that the last column ends at its natural height. By setting it to <code>0pt</code> , you can force the last column to be flush with the bottom of the page:

`\renewcommand{\lastcolglue}{0pt}`

`\songpos` The **songs** package uses a song-positioning algorithm that moves songs to the next column or page in order to avoid column- or page-breaks within songs. The algorithm has four levels of aggressiveness, numbered from 0 to 3. You can change the aggressiveness level by typing

`\songpos{<level>}`

The default level is 3, which avoids column-breaks, page-breaks, and page-turns within songs whenever possible. (Page-turns are page-breaks after odd-numbered pages in two-sided documents, or after all pages in one-sided documents.) Level 2 avoids page-breaks and page-turns but allows column-breaks within songs. Level 1 avoids only page-turns within songs. Level 0 turns off the song-positioning algorithm entirely. This causes songs to be positioned wherever T_EX thinks is best based on penalty settings (see `\vvpenalty` and `\spenalty`).

`\spenalty` The value of `\spenalty` controls the undesirability of column breaks at song boundaries. Usually it should be set to a value between 0 and `\vvpenalty` so that breaks between songs are preferable to breaks between verses within a song. By default it is set to 100. When it is -10000 or less, breaks between songs are required, so that each song always begins a fresh column.

11.6 Indexes

`\indexsongsas` **Index Appearance.** By default, the right-hand side of each index entry contains a list of one or more song numbers. To instead list page numbers, use the `\indexsongsas` macro:

`\indexsongsas{<id>}{\thepage}`

where `<id>` is the same identifier used in the `\newindex`, `\newauthorindex`, or `\newscripindex` macro that created the index. The second argument must always be something that expands into raw text without any formatting, since this text gets output to auxiliary files that are lexicographically sorted by the index-generation program. To go back to indexing songs by song number, use `\thesongnum` in place of `\thepage` in the above.

`\sepindexestru` Indexes are by default typeset on separate pages, and when an index is sufficiently small, it is centered on the page in one column. To disable these defaults, write `\sepindexesfalse`. This causes indexes to avoid using unnecessary vertical space or starting unnecessary new pages. To re-enable the defaults, use `\sepindexestru`.

`\idxrefsfont` To control the formatting of the list of references on the right-hand side of index entries, redefine `\idxrefsfont`. For example, to typeset each list in boldface, write

`\renewcommand{\idxrefsfont}{\bfseries}`

<code>\idxtitlefont</code>	Title indexes contain entries for song titles and also entries for notable lines of lyrics. The fonts for these entries are controlled by <code>\idxtitlefont</code> and <code>\idxlyricfont</code> , respectively. For example, to show title entries in boldface sans-serif and lyric entries in regular roman font, one could define:
<code>\idxlyricfont</code>	<pre> \renewcommand{\idxtitlefont}{\sffamily\bfseries} \renewcommand{\idxlyricfont}{\rmfamily\mdseries} </pre>
<code>\idxheadfont</code>	To change the font used to typeset the capital letters that start each alphabetic section of a large title index, redefine <code>\idxheadfont</code> . For example, to typeset those letters in italics instead of boldface, type
	<pre>\renewcommand{\idxheadfont}{\sffamily\it\LARGE}</pre>
<code>\idxbgcolor</code>	To change the background color of the shaded boxes that contain the capital letters that start each alphabetic section of a large title index, redefine <code>\idxbgcolor</code> . For example:
	<pre>\renewcommand{\idxbgcolor}{red}</pre>
<code>\idxheadwidth</code>	The <code>\idxheadwidth</code> length defines the width of the shaded boxes that begin each alphabetic block of a large title index. Setting it to 0pt suppresses the boxes entirely. For example, to set the width of those boxes to 1 centimeter, you could define
	<pre>\setlength{\idxheadwidth}{1cm}</pre>
<code>\idxauthfont</code>	The font used to typeset entries of an author index is controlled by <code>\idxauthfont</code> . For example, to typeset such entries in italics instead of boldface, type
	<pre>\renewcommand{\idxauthfont}{\small\it}</pre>
<code>\idxscripfont</code>	The font used to typeset entries of a scripture index is controlled by <code>\idxscripfont</code> . For example, to typeset such entries in boldface instead of italics, type
	<pre>\renewcommand{\idxscripfont}{\sffamily\small\bfseries}</pre>
<code>\idxbook</code>	To control the formatting of the lines that start each new book of the bible in a scripture index, redefine <code>\idxbook</code> , which accepts the book name as its single argument. For example, to typeset each book name in a box, one could define
	<pre>\renewcommand{\idxbook}[1]{\framebox{\small\bfseries#1}}</pre>
<code>\idxcont</code>	In a scripture index, when a column break separates a block of entries devoted to a book of the bible, the new column is titled “ <i>⟨bookname⟩</i> (continued)” by default. You can change this default by redefining the <code>\idxcont</code> macro, which receives the <i>⟨bookname⟩</i> as its single argument. For example, to typeset an index in German, one might define
	<pre>\renewcommand{\idxcont}[1]{\small\textbf{#1} (fortgefahren)}</pre>

`\songtarget` **PDF bookmarks and links.** Each `song` environment adds a PDF bookmark (if generating a PDF) and hyperlink target (if using the `hyperref` package) for the song by invoking `\songtarget` with two arguments: (1) a suggested PDF bookmark level, and (2) a link target name. Links in indexes to these targets are created by `\songlink`, which also gets two arguments: (1) the link target name (same as the second argument to `\songtarget`), and (2) the text to be linked.

Redefine these macros to customize or suppress these bookmarks and targets. For example, to enable both bookmarks and links (the default behavior) use:

```
\renewcommand{\songtarget}[2]
  {\pdfbookmark[#1]{\thesongnum. \songtitle}{#2}}
\renewcommand{\songlink}[2]{\hyperlink{#1}{#2}}
```

To enable links but not bookmarks, use:

```
\renewcommand{\songtarget}[2]{\hypertarget{#2}{\relax}}
\renewcommand{\songlink}[2]{\hyperlink{#1}{#2}}
```

To disable both bookmarks and links, use:

```
\renewcommand{\songtarget}[2]{}
\renewcommand{\songlink}[2]{#2}
```

`\titleprefixword` **Alphabetization Options.** In English, when a title begins with “The” or “A”, it is traditional to move these words to the end of the title and sort the entry by the following word. So for example, “The Song Title” is typically indexed as “Song Title, The”. To change this default behavior, you can use `\titleprefixword` in the document preamble to identify each word to be moved to the end whenever it appears as the first word of a title index entry. For example, to cause the word “I” to be moved to the end of title index entries, one could say,

```
\titleprefixword{I}
```

The first use of `\titleprefixword` overrides the defaults, so if you also want to continue to move “The” and “A” to the end of entries, you must also say `\titleprefixword{The}` and `\titleprefixword{A}` explicitly. This macro may only be used in the document preamble but may be used multiple times to declare multiple prefix words.

`\authseppword` **Special Words In Song Info.** When parsing author index entries, the word “and” is recognized by the `songidx` program as a conjunctive that separates author names. To override this default and specify a different conjunctive, use the `\authseppword` macro one or more times in the document preamble. For example, to instead treat “und” as a conjunctive, you could say,

```
\authseppword{und}
```

The first use of `\authseppword` and each of the following macros overrides the default, so if you also want to continue to treat “and” as a conjunctive, you must also say `\authseppword{and}` explicitly. The `\authseppword` macro and each of the following macros may only be used in the document preamble but may be used multiple times to declare multiple special words.

`\authbyword`

When parsing author index entries, the word “by” is recognized as a keyword signaling that the index entry should only include material in the current list item that follows the word “by”. So for example, “Music by J.S. Bach” is indexed as “Bach, J.S.” rather than “Bach, Music by J.S.” To recognize a different word instead of “by”, you can use `\authbyword` in the document preamble. For example, to recognize “durch” instead, you could say

```
\authbyword{durch}
```

`\authignoreword`

When parsing author index entries, if a list item contains the word “unknown”, that item is ignored and is not indexed. This prevents items like “Composer unknown” from being indexed as names. To cause the indexer to recognize and ignore a different word, you can use the `\authignoreword` macro in the document preamble. For example, to ignore author index entries containing the word “unbekannt”, you could say,

```
\authignoreword{unbekannt}
```

11.7 Page Headers and Footers

In \LaTeX , page headers and footers are defined using a system of invisible *marks* that get inserted into the document at the beginning of each logical unit of the document (e.g., each section, song, verse, and chorus). The headers and footers are then defined so as to refer to the first and/or last invisible mark that ends up on each page once the document is divided into pages. This section describes the marks made available by the `songs` package. For more detailed information about the marks already provided by \LaTeX and how to use them, consult any \LaTeX user manual.

`\songmark`
`\versemark`
`\chorusmark`

To add song information to page headings and footers, redefine `\songmark`, `\versemark`, or `\chorusmark` to add the necessary \TeX marks to the current page whenever a new song, verse, or chorus begins. These macros expect no arguments; to access the current song’s information including titles, use the macros documented in §12. To access the current song’s number or the current verse’s number, use `\thesongnum` or `\theversenum` (see §11.1). For example, to include the song number in the page headings produced by \LaTeX ’s `\pagestyle{myheadings}` feature, you could redefine `\songmark` as follows:

```
\renewcommand{\songmark}{\markboth{\thesongnum}{\thesongnum}}
```

11.8 Defining New Beginsong Keyvals

`\newsongkey` The `\beginsong` macro supports several optional keyval parameters for declaring song information, including `by=`, `sr=`, and `cr=`. Users can define their own additional keyvals as well. To do so, use the `\newsongkey` macro, which has the syntax

```
\newsongkey{<keyname>}{<initcode>}[<default>]{<setcode>}
```

Here, `<keyname>` is the name of the new key for the keyval, `<initcode>` is L^AT_EX code that is executed at the start of each `\beginsong` line before the `\beginsong` arguments are processed, `<default>` (if specified) is the default value used for the keyval when `<keyname>` appears in `\beginsong` without a value, and `<setcode>` is macro code that is executed whenever `<key>` is parsed as part of the `\beginsong` keyval arguments. In `<setcode>`, `#1` expands to the value given by the user for the keyval (or to `<default>` if no value was given).

For example, to define a new song key called `arr` which stores its value in a macro called `\arranger`, one could write:

```
\newcommand{\arranger}{}
\nnewsongkey{arr}{\def\arranger{}}
{\def\arranger{Arranged by #1\par}}
```

Then one could redefine `\extendprelude` to print the arranger below the other song header information:

```
\renewcommand{\extendprelude}{
  \showrefs\showauthors
  {\bfseries\arranger}
}
```

A `\beginsong` line could then specify the song's arranger as follows:

```
\beginsong{The Title}[arr={R. Ranger}]
:
\endsong
```

This produces



For more detailed information about keyvals and how they work, consult the documentation for David Carlisle's `keyval` package, which comes standard with most L^AT_EX 2_ε installations.

11.9 Font Kerning Corrections

Chord Overstriking. In order to conserve space and keep songs readable, the **songs** package pushes chords down very close to the lyrics with which they are paired. Unfortunately, this can sometimes cause low-hanging characters in chord names to overstrike the lyrics they sit above. For example,

`\[(Gsus4/D)]Overstrike` *produces* $\overstrike{(Gsus4/D)}$

Note that the parentheses and slash symbols in the chord name have invaded the lyric that sits beneath them.

`\chordlocals` The best solution to this problem is to use a font for chord names that minimizes low-hanging symbols; but if you lack such a font, then the following trick works pretty well. Somewhere in the preamble of your document, you can write the following L^AT_EX code:

```
\renewcommand{\chordlocals}{\catcode'\active
                             \catcode')\active
                             \catcode'/\active}
\newcommand{\smraise}[1]{\raise2pt\hbox{\small#1}}
\newcommand{\myslash}{\smraise/}
\newcommand{\myopenparen}{\smraise(}
\newcommand{\mycloseparen}{\smraise)}
\chordlocals
\global\let(\myopenparen
\global\let)\mycloseparen
\global\let/\myslash}
```

This sets the /, (, and) symbols as active characters whenever they appear within chord names. (See §16.2 for documentation of the `\chordlocals` hook.) Each active character is defined so that it produces a smaller, raised version of the original symbol. The result is as follows:

`\[(Gsus4/D)]Overstrike (fixed)` *produces* $\overstrike{(Gsus4/D)}$ (fixed)

As you can see, the low-hanging symbols have been elevated so that they sit above the baseline, correcting the overstrike problem.

`\shiftdblquotes` **Scripture Font Quotation Marks.** The **songs** package compensates for a kerning problem in the Zaph Chancery font (used to typeset scripture quotations) by redefining the ‘ ‘ and ’ ’ token sequences to be active characters that yield double-quotes shifted 1.1 points and 2 points left, respectively, of their normal positions. If you use a different font size for scripture quotations, then you can use the `\shiftdblquotes` macro when redefining `\scripturefont` to change this kerning correction. For example,

```
\renewcommand{\scripturefont}{
  \usefont{OT1}{pzc}{mb}{it}
  \shiftdblquotes{-1pt}{-2pt}{-3pt}{-4pt}
}
```

removes 1 point of space to the left and 2 points of space to the right of left-double-quote characters, and 3 points to the left and 4 points to the right of right-double-quotes, within scripture quotations.

12 Informational Macros

The macros described in this section can be used to retrieve information about the current song. This can be used when redefining `\extendprelude`, `\extendpostlude`, `\makeprelude`, `\makepostlude`, `\songmark`, `\versemark`, or `\chorusmark`, or any other macros that might typeset this information.

<code>\songauthors</code>	To get the current song's list of authors (if any) use <code>\songauthors</code> . This yields the value of the <code>by=</code> key used in the <code>\beginsong</code> line.
<code>\songrefs</code>	To get the current song's list of scripture references (if any) use <code>\songrefs</code> . This yields the value of the <code>sr=</code> key used in the <code>\beginsong</code> line, but modified with hyphens changed to en-dashes and spaces falling within a list of verse numbers changed to thin spaces for better typesetting. In addition, various penalties have been added to inhibit line breaks in strange places and encourage line breaks in others.
<code>\songcopyright</code>	To get the current song's copyright info (if any), use <code>\songcopyright</code> . This yields the value of the <code>cr=</code> key used in the <code>\beginsong</code> line.
<code>\songlicense</code>	To get the current song's licensing information (if any), use <code>\songlicense</code> . This yields the value of the <code>li=</code> key used in the <code>\beginsong</code> line, or whatever text was declared with <code>\setlicense</code> .
<code>\songtitle</code>	The <code>\songtitle</code> macro yields the current song's title. By default this is the first title provided in the <code>\beginsong</code> line. The <code>\nexttitle</code> and <code>\foreachtitle</code> macros (see below) cause it to be set to the current song's other titles, if any.
<code>\resettitles</code>	To get the current song's primary title (i.e., the first title specified in the song's <code>\beginsong</code> line), execute <code>\resettitles</code> . This sets the <code>\songtitle</code> macro to be the song's primary title.
<code>\nexttitle</code>	To get the song's next title, execute <code>\nexttitle</code> , which sets <code>\songtitle</code> to be the next title in the song's list of titles (or sets <code>\songtitle</code> to <code>\relax</code> if there are no more titles).
<code>\foreachtitle</code>	The <code>\foreachtitle</code> macro accepts L ^A T _E X code as its single argument and executes it once for each (remaining) song title. Within the provided code, use <code>\songtitle</code> to get the current title. For example, the following code generates a comma-separated list of all of the current song's titles:
	<pre> \resettitles \songtitle \nexttitle \foreachtitle{, \songtitle} </pre>
<code>\songlist</code>	When <code>\includeonlysongs</code> is used to extract a partial list of songs, the <code>\songlist</code> macro expands to the comma-separated list of songs that is being extracted. Redefining <code>\songlist</code> within the document preamble alters the list of songs to be extracted. Redefining it after the preamble may have unpredictable results.

13 Index Generation

The material in this section describes macros provided by the **songs** package that are used during the automatic generation of the song book indexes. Since index generation is automatic, document authors should not normally need to use any of these macros directly. The documentation in this section is therefore provided purely for completeness and for informational purposes. For instructions on how to automatically generate indexes when compiling a song book, see §6. For info on how to customize the appearance of indexes, see §11.6.

Automatic generation of song book indexes is a three stage process:

1. Each time a song book L^AT_EX file is compiled, an auxiliary file named $\langle filename \rangle$.sxd is written out for each $\langle filename \rangle$ defined using `\newindex`, `\newauthorindex`, or `\newscripindex`. These .sxd files are plain text files that can be viewed using any standard text editor. They begin with a line identifying the type of index (title, author, or scripture) and then contain triples of lines, one triple for each song to appear in the index. The first line of a triple has the information by which the song is to be indexed (a title, author, or scripture reference). The second line has the song's number in the book (yielded by `\thesongnum`). The third line is an identifying label for the song used in hyperlinking.
2. Once the .sxd files have been generated, an external program is used to transform each .sxd file into a .sbx file. Since the standard `makeindex` program provided with L^AT_EX is not powerful enough to sort scripture references, distributions of **songs** package come with a specialized `songidx` program to do this.
3. The .sbx files produced by the `songidx` program are then read in by the `\showindex` macro next time the source document is compiled using L^AT_EX. These .sbx files consist of the macros and environments described below.

`idxblock` In indexes that are blocked off into sections, one for each letter of the alphabet, the $\langle filename \rangle$.sbx files generated for that index consist of a series of `idxblock` environments, one for each such section. An `idxblock` environment begins and ends with

```
\begin{idxblock}{\langle letter \rangle}
:
\end{idxblock}
```

where $\langle letter \rangle$ is the letter of the alphabet for that block.

`\idxentry` The index entries themselves are created by lines of the form
`\idxaltentry`

```
\idxentry{\langle leftside \rangle}{\langle rightside \rangle}
\indexaltentry{\langle leftside \rangle}{\langle rightside \rangle}
```

each of which creates an index entry with $\langle leftside \rangle$ on the left, followed by a series of dots, followed by $\langle rightside \rangle$ on the right. The `\indexentry` macro is used for “normal” entries (e.g., titles in a title index), and `\indexaltentry` is used for “alternate” entries (e.g., lyric lines in a title index).

Within $\langle rightside \rangle$, multiple items are separated with `\\` macros instead of commas. When used in an index `.sbx` file, the `\\` macro produces a comma followed by some complex spacing that allows index lines to be broken suitably if they are too long to fit in one physical line.

14 Other Resources

There are a number of other \LaTeX packages available for typesetting songs, tablature diagrams, or song books. Probably the best of these is the `Songbook` package by Christopher Rath (<http://rath.ca/Misc/Songbook/>). Most of the differences between other packages and this one are intentional; the following is a summary of where I’ve adopted various differing design decisions and why.

Ease of Song Entry. Much of the `songs` package programming is devoted to easing the burden of typing chords. With most \LaTeX song book packages the user types chords using a standard \LaTeX macro syntax like `\chord{ $\langle chord \rangle$ }{ $\langle lyric \rangle$ }`. The `songs` package uses a less conventional `\[$\langle chord \rangle$] $\langle lyric \rangle$` syntax for several reasons detailed below.

First, macros in the standard \LaTeX syntax require more key-presses than macros in the `songs` package’s syntax. This can become very taxing when typing up a large book. Chords often appear as frequently as one per syllable, especially in hymns, so keeping the syntax as brief as possible is desirable.

Second, the standard \LaTeX macro syntax requires the user to estimate how much of the $\langle lyric \rangle$ will lie below the chord (because the $\langle lyric \rangle$ part must be enclosed in braces) whereas the `songs` package’s syntax does not. Estimating this accurately can be quite difficult, since in many cases the $\langle lyric \rangle$ part must include punctuation or multiple words to get proper results. The `songs` package automates this for the user, significantly easing the task of chord-entry.

Third, unlike the standard \LaTeX chord syntax, the `songs` package’s syntax handles all hyphenation of chorded lyrics fully automatically. Extra hyphenation must be introduced in chord books wherever a chord is wider than the syllable it sits above. With the standard \LaTeX chord syntax such hyphenation must be introduced manually by the user (usually via a special hyphenation macro), but the `songs` package does this automatically.

Fourth and finally, some other packages allow the user to use “b” in a $\langle chord \rangle$ to produce a flat symbol, whereas the `songs` package requires an “&” instead. Using “b” is more intuitive but prevents the use of “b” for any other purpose within a $\langle chord \rangle$, such as to produce a literal “b” or to type another macro name like `\hbox` that contains a “b”. Consequently, the `songs` package uses the less obvious “&” symbol to produce flat symbols.

Song Structure. The `songs` package provides a relatively small number of macros for typesetting high-level song structure, including verses, choruses, textual comments, and conditional macros that indicate that certain sections should go in chord books but not lyric books. These can be combined to typeset more sophisticated structures such as intros, bridges, brackets, endings, and the like. This is done in lieu of providing a specific macro for each of these structures since it results in greater flexibility and fewer macros for users to learn.

Multiple columns. The `songs` package was designed from the ground up to produce song books with many songs per page, arranged in multiple columns. As a result, it includes elaborate support for many features not found in most other packages, such as automatic column balancing, completely customizable song header and song footer blocks, and facilities for adding beautiful scripture quotations to fill in gaps between songs.

Indexes. Another major feature of the `songs` package is its support for a variety of different index types, most notably indexes arranged by scripture reference. Scripture indexes can be invaluable for planning services around particular sermons or topics. The `songs` package allows book authors to specify the names and preferred ordering of books of the bible, and automatically handles complex issues like overlapping verse ranges to produce an easy-to-read, compact, and well-ordered index. Other supported indexes include those sorted by author, by title, and by notable lines of lyrics.

Automatic Transposition. The `songs` package has a facility for automatically transposing songs, and even generating chord books that print the chords in multiple keys (e.g., so that a pianist and guitarist using a capo can play together from the same book).

The `songs` package was developed entirely independently of all other \LaTeX song book packages. I originally developed the set of \LaTeX macros that eventually became the `songs` package in order to typeset a song book for the Graduate Christian Fellowship (GCF) at Cornell University, and the Cornell International Christian Fellowship (CICF). Once I had fine-tuned my package to be sufficiently versatile, I decided to release it for public use. At that time I noticed the `Songbook` package and others, and wrote this summary of the most prominent differences.

For information on more song-typesetting resources for \LaTeX , I recommend consulting the documentation provided with the `Songbook` package. It includes an excellent list of other resources that might be of interest to creators of song books.

15 GNU General Public License

TERMS AND CONDITIONS FOR COPYING, DISTRIBUTION AND MODIFICATION

0. This License applies to any program or other work which contains a notice placed by the copyright holder saying it may be distributed under the terms of this General Public License. The “Program”, below, refers to any such program or work, and a “work based on the Program” means either the Program or any derivative work under copyright law: that is to say, a work containing the Program or a portion of it, either verbatim or with modifications and/or translated into another language. (Hereinafter, translation is included without limitation in the term “modification”.) Each licensee is addressed as “you”.

Activities other than copying, distribution and modification are not covered by this License; they are outside its scope. The act of running the Program is not restricted, and the output from the Program is covered only if its contents constitute a work based on the Program (independent of having been made by running the Program). Whether that is true depends on what the Program does.

1. You may copy and distribute verbatim copies of the Program’s source code as you receive it, in any medium, provided that you conspicuously and appropriately publish on each copy an appropriate copyright notice and disclaimer of warranty; keep intact all the notices that refer to this License and to the absence of any warranty; and give any other recipients of the Program a copy of this License along with the Program.

You may charge a fee for the physical act of transferring a copy, and you may at your option offer warranty protection in exchange for a fee.

2. You may modify your copy or copies of the Program or any portion of it, thus forming a work based on the Program, and copy and distribute such modifications or work under the terms of Section 1 above, provided that you also meet all of these conditions:
 - (a) You must cause the modified files to carry prominent notices stating that you changed the files and the date of any change.
 - (b) You must cause any work that you distribute or publish, that in whole or in part contains or is derived from the Program or any part thereof, to be licensed as a whole at no charge to all third parties under the terms of this License.
 - (c) If the modified program normally reads commands interactively when run, you must cause it, when started running for such interactive use in the most ordinary way, to print or display an announcement including an appropriate copyright notice and a notice that there is no warranty (or else, saying that you provide a warranty) and that users may redistribute the program under these conditions, and telling the user how to view a copy of this License. (Exception: if the Program itself is interactive but does not normally print such an announcement, your work based on the Program is not required to print an announcement.)

These requirements apply to the modified work as a whole. If identifiable sections of that work are not derived from the Program, and can be reasonably considered independent and separate works in themselves, then this License, and its terms, do not apply to those sections when you distribute them as separate works. But when you distribute the same sections as part of a whole which is a work based on the Program, the distribution of the whole must be on the terms of this License, whose permissions for other licensees extend to the entire whole, and thus to each and every part regardless of who wrote it.

Thus, it is not the intent of this section to claim rights or contest your rights to work written entirely by you; rather, the intent is to exercise the right to control the distribution of derivative or collective works based on the Program.

In addition, mere aggregation of another work not based on the Program with the Program (or with a work based on the Program) on a volume of a storage or distribution medium does not bring the other work under the scope of this License.

3. You may copy and distribute the Program (or a work based on it, under Section 2) in object code or executable form under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above provided that you also do one of the following:
 - (a) Accompany it with the complete corresponding machine-readable source code, which must be distributed under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above on a medium customarily used for software interchange; or,
 - (b) Accompany it with a written offer, valid for at least three years, to give any third party, for a charge no more than your cost of physically performing source distribution, a complete machine-readable copy of the corresponding source code, to be distributed under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above on a medium customarily used for software interchange; or,
 - (c) Accompany it with the information you received as to the offer to distribute corresponding source code. (This alternative is allowed only for noncommercial distribution and only if you received the program in object code or executable form with such an offer, in accord with Subsection b above.)

The source code for a work means the preferred form of the work for making modifications to it. For an executable work, complete source code means all the source code for all modules it contains, plus any associated interface definition files, plus the scripts used to control compilation and installation of the executable. However, as a special exception, the source code distributed need not include anything that is normally distributed (in either source or binary form) with the major components (compiler, kernel, and so on) of the operating system on which the executable runs, unless that component itself accompanies the executable.

If distribution of executable or object code is made by offering access to copy from a designated place, then offering equivalent access to copy the source code from the same place counts as distribution of the source code, even though third parties are not compelled to copy the source along with the object code.

4. You may not copy, modify, sublicense, or distribute the Program except as expressly provided under this License. Any attempt otherwise to copy, modify, sublicense or distribute the Program is void, and will automatically terminate your rights under this License. However, parties who have received copies, or rights, from you under this License will not have their licenses terminated so long as such parties remain in full compliance.
5. You are not required to accept this License, since you have not signed it. However, nothing else grants you permission to modify or distribute the Program or its derivative works. These actions are prohibited by law if you do not accept this License. Therefore, by modifying or distributing the Program (or any work based on the Program), you indicate your acceptance of this License to do so, and all its terms and conditions for copying, distributing or modifying the Program or works based on it.

6. Each time you redistribute the Program (or any work based on the Program), the recipient automatically receives a license from the original licensor to copy, distribute or modify the Program subject to these terms and conditions. You may not impose any further restrictions on the recipients' exercise of the rights granted herein. You are not responsible for enforcing compliance by third parties to this License.
7. If, as a consequence of a court judgment or allegation of patent infringement or for any other reason (not limited to patent issues), conditions are imposed on you (whether by court order, agreement or otherwise) that contradict the conditions of this License, they do not excuse you from the conditions of this License. If you cannot distribute so as to satisfy simultaneously your obligations under this License and any other pertinent obligations, then as a consequence you may not distribute the Program at all. For example, if a patent license would not permit royalty-free redistribution of the Program by all those who receive copies directly or indirectly through you, then the only way you could satisfy both it and this License would be to refrain entirely from distribution of the Program.

If any portion of this section is held invalid or unenforceable under any particular circumstance, the balance of the section is intended to apply and the section as a whole is intended to apply in other circumstances.

It is not the purpose of this section to induce you to infringe any patents or other property right claims or to contest validity of any such claims; this section has the sole purpose of protecting the integrity of the free software distribution system, which is implemented by public license practices. Many people have made generous contributions to the wide range of software distributed through that system in reliance on consistent application of that system; it is up to the author/donor to decide if he or she is willing to distribute software through any other system and a licensee cannot impose that choice.

This section is intended to make thoroughly clear what is believed to be a consequence of the rest of this License.

8. If the distribution and/or use of the Program is restricted in certain countries either by patents or by copyrighted interfaces, the original copyright holder who places the Program under this License may add an explicit geographical distribution limitation excluding those countries, so that distribution is permitted only in or among countries not thus excluded. In such case, this License incorporates the limitation as if written in the body of this License.
9. The Free Software Foundation may publish revised and/or new versions of the General Public License from time to time. Such new versions will be similar in spirit to the present version, but may differ in detail to address new problems or concerns.

Each version is given a distinguishing version number. If the Program specifies a version number of this License which applies to it and "any later version", you have the option of following the terms and conditions either of that version or of any later version published by the Free Software Foundation. If the Program does not specify a version number of this License, you may choose any version ever published by the Free Software Foundation.

10. If you wish to incorporate parts of the Program into other free programs whose distribution conditions are different, write to the author to ask for permission. For software which is copyrighted by the Free Software Foundation, write to the Free

Software Foundation; we sometimes make exceptions for this. Our decision will be guided by the two goals of preserving the free status of all derivatives of our free software and of promoting the sharing and reuse of software generally.

NO WARRANTY

11. BECAUSE THE PROGRAM IS LICENSED FREE OF CHARGE, THERE IS NO WARRANTY FOR THE PROGRAM, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW. EXCEPT WHEN OTHERWISE STATED IN WRITING THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND/OR OTHER PARTIES PROVIDE THE PROGRAM “AS IS” WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE PROGRAM IS WITH YOU. SHOULD THE PROGRAM PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION.
12. IN NO EVENT UNLESS REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW OR AGREED TO IN WRITING WILL ANY COPYRIGHT HOLDER, OR ANY OTHER PARTY WHO MAY MODIFY AND/OR REDISTRIBUTE THE PROGRAM AS PERMITTED ABOVE, BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY GENERAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE PROGRAM (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOSS OF DATA OR DATA BEING RENDERED INACCURATE OR LOSSES SUSTAINED BY YOU OR THIRD PARTIES OR A FAILURE OF THE PROGRAM TO OPERATE WITH ANY OTHER PROGRAMS), EVEN IF SUCH HOLDER OR OTHER PARTY HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

16 Implementation

The following provides the verbatim implementation of the **songs** L^AT_EX package, along with commentary on how it works. In general, macro names that contain a @ symbol are not intended to be directly accessible by the outside world; they are for purely internal use. All other macros are intended to be used or redefined by document authors.

Most of the macros likely to be of real interest to song book authors can be found in §16.2. To find the implementation of any particular macro, the index at the end of this document should prove helpful.

The unwary T_EXer may wonder at the rather large size of the implementation. The volume and complexity of the code stems mainly from the following challenging features:

- Putting chords above lyrics fully automatically requires building an entire lyric-parser in L^AT_EX (see §16.10).
- Avoiding page-turns within songs without prohibiting column-breaks requires building a completely new page-breaking algorithm (see §16.4).
- The package must be able to generate an astonishing number of document variants from a common source: lyric-only books, chorded books, digital slides, transparency slides, selected song subsets, transposed songs, and combinations of the above. This is like putting six or more packages into one.
- Song book indexes are far more complex than those for a prose book. See §16.15 for some of the difficulties involved.

16.1 Initialization

The code in this section detects any T_EX versioning or configuration settings that are relevant to the rest of the song book code.

`\ifSB@etex` Numerous enhancements are possible when using an ε -T_EX compatible version of L^AT_EX. We start by checking to see whether ε -T_EX primitives are available.

```
1 \newif\ifSB@etex
2 \ifx\etexversion\undefined\else
3   \ifx\etexversion\relax\else
4     \SB@etextrue
5     \IfFileExists{etex.sty}{\RequirePackage{etex}}{}
6   \fi
7 \fi
```

`\ifSB@pdf` Detect whether we're generating a pdf file, since this affects the treatment of hyperlinks and bookmark indexes.

```
8 \newif\ifSB@pdf\SB@pdffalse
9 \ifx\pdfoutput\undefined\else
10  \ifx\pdfoutput\relax\else
```



```

11     \ifnum\pdfoutput<\@ne\else
12         \SB@pdftrue
13     \fi
14 \fi
15 \fi

\ifSB@preamble Some macros have different effects depending on when they're used in the preamble
                or in the document body, so we need a conditional that remembers whether we're
                still in the preamble. It gets initialized to true and later changed to false once the
                body begins.
                16 \newif\ifSB@preamble
                17 \SB@preambletrue

\ifSB@test Reserve some control sequence names for scratch use.
    \SB@temp 18 \newif\ifSB@test
    \SB@tempii 19 \newcommand\SB@temp{}
\SB@tempiii 20 \newcommand\SB@tempii{}
    \SB@tempiv 21 \newcommand\SB@tempiii{}
    \SB@tempv 22 \newcommand\SB@tempiv{}
    \SB@tempv 23 \newcommand\SB@tempv{}

    \SB@dimen Reserve some temp registers for various purposes.
\SB@dimenii 24 \newdimen\SB@dimen
\SB@dimeniii 25 \newdimen\SB@dimenii
\SB@dimeniv 26 \newdimen\SB@dimeniii
    \SB@box 27 \newdimen\SB@dimeniv
    \SB@boxii 28 \newbox\SB@box
    \SB@boxiii 29 \newbox\SB@boxii
    \SB@boxiii 30 \newbox\SB@boxiii
    \SB@toks 31 \newtoks\SB@toks
    \SB@cnt 32 \newcount\SB@cnt
    \SB@cntii 33 \newcount\SB@cntii
    \SB@skip 34 \newskip\SB@skip

\SB@envbox Also reserve a slightly less volatile box register for per-environment use. In scrip-
            ture environments it holds the scripture citation. In indexes it holds the index
            title text.
            35 \newbox\SB@envbox

            Load David Carlisle's keyval package for processing  $\langle key \rangle = \langle value \rangle$  style
            macro arguments.
            36 \RequirePackage{keyval}

```

16.2 Default Parameters

This section defines macros and lengths that will typically be executed or redefined by the user in the document preamble to initialize the document. (Not all of these are restricted to preamble usage, however. Many can be used throughout the document to switch styles for different sections or different songs.)

`\lyricfont` Define the font style to use for formatting song lyrics.
37 `\newcommand\lyricfont{\normalfont\normalsize}`

`\stitlefont` Define the font style to use for formatting song titles.
38 `\newcommand\stitlefont{%`
39 `\sffamily\ifslides\Huge\else\slshape\Large\fi%`
40 `}`

`\versefont` By default, verses, choruses, and textual notes just allow the `\lyricfont` style to
`\chorusfont` continue.
`\notefont` 41 `\newcommand\versefont{}`
42 `\newcommand\chorusfont{}`
43 `\newcommand\notefont{}`

`\scripturefont` Define the font style to use for formatting scripture quotations (defaults to Zapf
Chancery).
44 `\newcommand\scripturefont{%`
45 `\usefont{OT1}{pzc}{mb}{it}%`
46 `\shiftdblquotes{-1.1\p@}\z@{-2\p@}\z@%`
47 `}`

`\printscrcite` Define the printing style for the citation at the end of a scripture quotation.
48 `\newcommand\printscrcite[1]{\sffamily\small#1}`

`\snumbgcolor` Define the background color used for shaded boxes containing song numbers, tex-
`\notebgcolor` tual notes, and index section headers, respectively. To turn off all shading for a
`\idxbgcolor` box type, use `\def<macroname>{}`.
49 `\newcommand\snumbgcolor{SongbookShade}`
50 `\newcommand\notebgcolor{SongbookShade}`
51 `\newcommand\idxbgcolor{SongbookShade}`

`\versejustify` Verses and choruses are both left-justified with hanging indentation equal to
`\chorusjustify` `\parindent`,
52 `\newcommand\versejustify{\justifyleft}`
53 `\newcommand\chorusjustify{\justifyleft}`

`\notejustify` Textual notes are fully justified when they are too long to fit in a single line.
54 `\newcommand\notejustify{%`
55 `\advance\baselineskip\p@relax%`
56 `\leftskip\z@skip\rightskip\z@skip%`
57 `\parfillskip\@flushglue\parindent\z@%`
58 `}`

`\placernote` Textual notes are placed flush-left. The single argument to this macro is horizontal
material that comprises the note. Usually it will consist of various hboxes and
specials that were produced by `\colorbox`.
59 `\newcommand\placernote[1]{%`
60 `\leftskip\z@skip\rightskip\@flushglue\SB@cbarshift%`
61 `\noindent#1\par%`
62 `}`

These counters define the current song number and verse number. They can be redefined by the user at any time.

	63 <code>\newcounter{songnum}</code>
	64 <code>\newcounter{versenum}</code>
<code>\thesongnum</code>	By default, the song numbering style will simply be an arabic number. Redefine
<code>\songnumstyle</code>	<code>\thesongnum</code> to change it. (The <code>\songnumstyle</code> macro is obsolete and exists only for backward compatibility.)
	65 <code>\renewcommand\thesongnum{\songnumstyle{songnum}}</code>
	66 <code>\newcommand\songnumstyle{}</code>
	67 <code>\let\songnumstyle\arabic</code>
<code>\theversenum</code>	By default, the verse numbering style will simply be an arabic number. Redefine
<code>\versenumstyle</code>	<code>\theversenum</code> to change it. (The <code>\versenumstyle</code> macro is obsolete and exists only for backward compatibility.)
	68 <code>\renewcommand\theversenum{\versenumstyle{versenum}}</code>
	69 <code>\newcommand\versenumstyle{}</code>
	70 <code>\let\versenumstyle\arabic</code>
<code>\printsongnum</code>	Define the printing style for the large, boxed song numbers starting each song.
	71 <code>\newcommand\printsongnum[1]{\sffamily\bfseries\LARGE#1}</code>
<code>\printversenum</code>	Define the printing style for the verse numbers to the left of each verse.
	72 <code>\newcommand\printversenum[1]{\lyricfont#1.\ }</code>
<code>\placeversenum</code>	Verse numbers are placed flush-left. This is achieved by inserting horizontal glue that reverses both the <code>\leftskip</code> and the <code>\parindent</code> . The single argument to this macro is an hbox containing the verse number.
	73 <code>\newcommand\placeversenum[1]{%</code>
	74 <code>\hskip-\leftskip\hskip-\parindent\relax%</code>
	75 <code>\box#1%</code>
	76 <code>}</code>
<code>\everyverse</code>	The following hooks allow users to insert material at the head of each verse or
<code>\everychorus</code>	chorus.
	77 <code>\newcommand\everyverse{}</code>
	78 <code>\newcommand\everychorus{}</code>
<code>\printchord</code>	Define the printing style for chords.
	79 <code>\newcommand\printchord[1]{\sffamily\slshape\large#1}</code>
<code>\chordlocals</code>	This hook is expanded at the start of the scoping group that surrounds every chord name. Thus, it can be used to set any catcodes or definitions that should be local to chord names.
	80 <code>\newcommand\chordlocals{}</code>

<code>\versesep</code>	Specify the vertical distance between song verses. This gets set to a sentinel value by default; if the user doesn't redefine it by the end of the document preamble, it gets redefined to something sensible based on other settings. 81 <code>\newskip\versesep</code> 82 <code>\versesep123456789sp\relax</code>
<code>\afterpreludeskip</code> <code>\beforepostludeskip</code>	Users can specify the amount of vertical space that separates song prelude and postlude material from the body of the song by adjusting the following two macros. 83 <code>\newskip\afterpreludeskip</code> 84 <code>\afterpreludeskip=2\p@\@plus4\p@</code> 85 <code>\newskip\beforepostludeskip</code> 86 <code>\beforepostludeskip=2\p@\@plus4\p@</code>
<code>\baselineadj</code>	Define an adjustment factor for the vertical distance between consecutive lyric baselines. Setting this to zero accepts the default baseline distance computed by the songs package. 87 <code>\newskip\baselineadj</code> 88 <code>\baselineadj\z@skip</code>
<code>\clineparams</code>	The spacing between chords and the lyrics below them can be adjusted by changing the values of <code>\baselineskip</code> , <code>\lineskiplimit</code> , and <code>\lineskip</code> within the following macro. By default, <code>\baselineskip</code> is set to 2 points smaller than the height of the current (lyric) font, and <code>\lineskiplimit</code> and <code>\lineskip</code> are set so that chords intrude at most 2 points into the lyric below them. This helps to keep chords tight with lyrics. 89 <code>\newcommand\clineparams{%</code> 90 <code>\baselineskip\fontsize\p@%</code> 91 <code>\advance\baselineskip-2\p@%</code> 92 <code>\lineskiplimit-2\p@%</code> 93 <code>\lineskip-2\p@%</code> 94 <code>}</code>
<code>\parindent</code>	The <code>\parindent</code> length controls how far broken lyric lines are indented from the left margin. 95 <code>\parindent.25in</code>
<code>\idxheadwidth</code>	Specify the width of the head-boxes in a large index. 96 <code>\newlength\idxheadwidth</code> 97 <code>\setlength\idxheadwidth{1.5cm}</code>
<code>\songnumwidth</code>	Set the width of the song number boxes that begin each song. We guess a suitable width by typesetting the text "999." 98 <code>\newlength\songnumwidth</code> 99 <code>\settowidth\songnumwidth{\printsongnum{999.}}</code>
<code>\versenumwidth</code>	Set the width that is reserved for normal-sized verse numbers. (Verse numbers wider than this will indent the first line of lyrics.) 100 <code>\newlength\versenumwidth</code> 101 <code>\settowidth\versenumwidth{\printversenum{9\kern1em}}</code>

`\cbarwidth` This dictates the width of the vertical line placed to the left of choruses. Setting it to `0pt` eliminates the line entirely.

```

102 \newlength\cbarwidth
103 \setlength\cbarwidth\p@

```

`\sbarheight` This dictates the height of the horizontal line placed between each pair of songs. Setting it to `0pt` eliminates the line entirely.

```

104 \newlength\sbarheight
105 \setlength\sbarheight\p@

```

Column- and page-breaks should typically not occur within a verse or chorus unless they are unavoidable. Thus, we set the `\interlinepenalty` to a high number (1000).

```

106 \interlinepenalty\@m

```

`\vvpenalty` The following count registers define the line-breaking penalties inserted between verses, between choruses, after a verse followed by a chorus, after a chorus followed by a verse, and at `\brk` macros, respectively.

`\ccpenalty` The default value of 200 was chosen based on the following logic: Chord books should not yield underfull vbox warnings no matter how short their columns are. However, we still want to put as much material in each column as possible while avoiding intra-song column-breaks when they can be avoided. Chord mode therefore sets `\colbotglue` with glue whose stretchability is half of the `\textheight`. Such glue will stretch at most twice its stretchability, yielding a badness of 800 in the worst case. The default `\vbadness` setting starts issuing warnings at badness 1000, so we set the penalties below to $1000 - 800 = 200$.

```

107 \newcount\vvpenalty\vvpenalty200
108 \newcount\ccpenalty\ccpenalty200
109 \newcount\vcpenalty\vcpenalty200
110 \newcount\cvpenalty\cvpenalty200
111 \newcount\brkpenalty\brkpenalty200

```

`\spenalty` The following penalty gets inserted between songs. Setting it to a proper value is a somewhat delicate balancing act. It should typically be something between 0 and the default penalties above, so for now it defaults to 100. To start each song on a fresh column/page, set it to -10000 or below.

```

112 \newcount\spenalty\spenalty100

```

`\songmark` The user can redefine the following macros to add \TeX marks for each song, each verse, or each chorus. Such marks are used by \LaTeX to define page headers and footers.

```

113 \newcommand\songmark{}
114 \newcommand\versemark{}
115 \newcommand\chorusmark{}

```

`\extendprelude` To just add some fields to the existing `\makeprelude` or `\makepostlude` without having to redefine them entirely, users can redefine `\extendprelude` or `\extendpostlude`. By default, the prelude has the scripture references followed by the authors, and the postlude has the copyright info followed by the licensing info.

```

116 \newcommand\extendprelude{\showrefs\showauthors}
117 \newcommand\extendpostlude{\songcopyright\ \songlicense\unskip}

```

`\idxheadfont` Users can redefine `\idxheadfont` to affect the font in which each capital letter that heads a section of a title index is rendered.

```

118 \newcommand\idxheadfont{\sffamily\bfseries\LARGE}

```

`\idxtitlefont` Users can redefine `\idxtitlefont` to affect the font in which song title index entries are rendered.

```

119 \newcommand\idxtitlefont{\sffamily\slshape}

```

`\idxlyricfont` Users can redefine `\idxlyricfont` to affect the font in which notable lines of lyrics are rendered in a title index.

```

120 \newcommand\idxlyricfont{\rmfamily}

```

`\idxscripfont` Users can redefine `\idxscripfont` to affect the font in which scripture references are rendered in a scripture index.

```

121 \newcommand\idxscripfont{\sffamily\small\slshape}

```

`\idxauthfont` Users can redefine `\idxauthfont` to affect the font in which contributor names are rendered in an author index.

```

122 \newcommand\idxauthfont{\small\bfseries}

```

`\idxrefsfont` Users can redefine `\idxrefsfont` to affect the font in which the list of song references on the right-hand-side of an index entry is typeset.

```

123 \newcommand\idxrefsfont{\normalfont\normalsize}

```

`\idxbook` Users can redefine `\idxbook` to dictate the book name header in a scripture index that begins each book of the bible.

```

124 \newcommand\idxbook[1]{\small\bfseries#1}

```

`\idxcont` Users can redefine `\idxcont` to dictate the column header in a scripture index after a column break falls within a book of the bible.

```

125 \newcommand\idxcont[1]{\small\textbf{#1} (continued)}

```

`\colbotglue` Glue of size `\colbotglue` is inserted at the bottom of each column. We use a macro instead of a glue register so that this can be redefined in terms of variable quantities such as `\textheight`.

```

126 \newcommand\colbotglue{}
127 \let\colbotglue\z@skip

```

`\lastcolglue` Glue of size `\lastcolglue` is inserted at the bottom of the last column.

```

128 \newcommand\lastcolglue{}
129 \let\lastcolglue\@flushglue

\minfrets Define the minimum number of fret rows that should appear in tablature diagrams.
130 \newcount\minfrets\minfrets4

\SB@colwidth Define a length to store the computed width of each column in a multi-column
song page. The user shouldn't set this one directly, but some users might want to
refer to it in calculations.
131 \newdimen\SB@colwidth

```

16.3 Package Options

This section defines code associated with the various option settings that can be specified on the `\usepackage` line. Many of these options can also be turned on or off subsequent to the `\usepackage` line, so macros for doing that are also located here. The options are not actually processed until §16.17 because some of the macros defined here refer to macros that have not yet been defined.

`slides` (*Default: off*) Turning this option on generates a book of overhead slides—one for each song. It really just amounts to changing various parameter settings. Elsewhere in the code we also consult `\ifslides` to determine a few default parameter settings and to use a different song preamble structure. All the parameter changes below are local to the current scope; so to undo slides mode, just put `\slides` within a group and end the group wherever you want the slides settings to end.

```

132 \DeclareOption{slides}{\slides}
133 \newcommand\slides{%
134   \slidestrue%
135   \def\lyricfont{\normalfont\huge}%
136   \def\chorusfont{\slshape}%
137   \def\versejustify{\justifycenter}%
138   \let\chorusjustify\versejustify
139   \def\placenote##1{\justifycenter\noindent##1\par}%
140   \scriptureoff%
141   \onesongcolumn%
142   \ifSB@preamble\ifSB@chordedspec\else\SB@chordsoff\fi\fi%
143   \spenalty-\@M%
144   \let\colbotglue\@flushglue%
145   \setlength\cbarwidth\z@%
146   \setlength\sbarheight\z@%
147 }

```

`\justifyleft` The `\justifyleft` macro sets up an environment in which lyrics are left-justified with hanging indentation equal to `\parindent`. It reserves spaces for verse numbers if used in a verse, and reserves space for the vertical bar left of choruses if used in a chorus.

```
148 \newcommand\justifyleft{%
149   \leftskip\parindent%
150   \ifSB@inverse\advance\leftskip\versenumwidth\fi%
151   \SB@cbarshift%
152   \parindent-\parindent%
153 }
```

`\justifycenter` The `\justifycenter` macro sets up an environment in which lyrics are centered on each line. Verse numbers continue to be placed flush-left, but `\placeversenum` is temporarily redefined to keep the rest of the line containing a verse number centered.

```
154 \newcommand\justifycenter{%
155   \centering\SB@cbarshift\rightskip\leftskip%
156   \def\placeversenum##1{%
157     \hskip-\leftskip\hskip-\parindent\relax%
158     \hangindent-\wd##1\hangafter\m@ne%
159     \box##1\hfil%
160   }%
161 }
```

`unouter` (*Default: off*) Several macros provided by the `songs` package are, by default, declared `\outer` to aid in debugging. However, unusual documents may need to use these macros within larger constructs. To do so, use the `unouter` option to prevent any of the macros supplied by this package from being declared `\outer`.

```
162 \newcommand\SB@outer{\outer}
163 \DeclareOption{unouter}{\let\SB@outer\relax}
```

`rawtext` (*Default: off*) Instead of generating a document, this dumps a text version of the song book to a file. This option can only be set in the `\usepackage` line because it dictates many top-level macro definitions. Turning `rawtext` on turns off the indexes by default, but this can be overridden by explicitly setting index options. (Note: Using `rawtext` with indexes turned on doesn't actually work yet, but might be added in a future revision.)

```
164 \DeclareOption{rawtext}{\rawtexttrue\indexsoff}
```

`noshading` (*Default: off*) Inhibit all shaded boxes (e.g., if the color package is unavailable). This option can only be set in the `\usepackage` line because the color package must be loaded in the preamble if at all. (Note: In a future release this might be extended to be modifiable throughout the preamble.)

```
165 \DeclareOption{noshading}{\SB@colorboxesfalse}
```


`noindexes` (*Default: off*) Suppress generation of index files and displaying of in-document indexes. The `\indexeson` and `\indexesoff` macros can be used elsewhere to toggle display of indexes. Index-regeneration will occur if indexes are turned on by the end of the document.

```

166 \DeclareOption{noindexes}{\indexesoff}
167 \newcommand\indexeson{\songindexestruer}
168 \newcommand\indexesoff{\songindexesfalse}

```

`nopdfindex` (*Default: off*) Suppress creation of PDF bookmark entries and hyperlinks.

```

169 \DeclareOption{nopdfindex}{%
170   \let\songtarget\@gobbletwo%
171   \let\songlink\@secondoftwo%
172 }

```

`\ifSB@measurespec` The `showmeasures` and `chorded` options interact in the sense that by default, switching one of them on or off switches the other on or off as well. However, if the user explicitly says that one should be on or off, then switching the other shouldn't affect it. To produce this behavior, we need two extra conditionals to remember whether each of these options has been explicitly specified by the user or whether it is still in a default state.

```

173 \newif\ifSB@measurespec
174 \newif\ifSB@chordedspec

```

`chorded` (*Default: chorded*) Determines whether chords should be shown. This option can be set in the `\usepackage` line or toggled elsewhere with the `\chordson` and `\chordsoff` macros. Chords cannot be turned on in conjunction with the `rawtext` option. If chords are turned on by the end of the preamble, no attempt will be made to balance columns on each page.

`\SB@chordson`

`\SB@chordsoff`

```

175 \DeclareOption{chorded}{\chordson}
176 \DeclareOption{lyric}{\chordsoff}
177 \newcommand\chordson{\SB@chordedspectruer\SB@chordson}
178 \newcommand\chordsoff{\SB@chordedspectruer\SB@chordsoff}
179 \newcommand\SB@chordson{%
180   \ifrawtext%
181     \SB@errrtopt%
182   \else%
183     \chordedtrue\lyricfalse%
184     \let\SB@bracket\SB@chord%
185     \let\SB@rechord\SB@@rechord%
186     \let\SB@ch\SB@ch@on%
187     \ifSB@measurespec%
188       \ifmeasures\SB@measureson\else\SB@measuresoff\fi%
189     \else%
190       \SB@measureson%
191     \fi%
192     \ifSB@preamble\def\colbotglue{\z@\@plus.5\textheight}\fi%
193     \SB@setbaselineskip%
194   \fi%

```

```

195 }
196 \newcommand\SB@chordsoff{%
197   \chordedfalse\lyrictrue%
198   \def\SB@bracket##1{\ignorespaces}%
199   \let\SB@rechord\relax%
200   \let\SB@ch\SB@ch@off%
201   \ifSB@measurespec%
202     \ifmeasures\SB@measureson\else\SB@measuresoff\fi%
203   \else%
204     \SB@measuresoff%
205   \fi%
206   \ifSB@preamble\let\colbotglue\z@skip\fi%
207   \SB@setbaselineskip%
208 }

showmeasures (Default: showmeasures if chorded, nomeasures otherwise) Determines whether
nomeasures measure bars and meter notes should be shown. Option can be set in the
\measureson \usepackage line or toggled elsewhere with the \measureson and \measuresoff
\measuresoff macros.

\SB@measureson 209 \DeclareOption{showmeasures}{\measureson}
\SB@measuresoff 210 \DeclareOption{nomeasures}{\measuresoff}
211 \newcommand\measureson{\SB@measurespectrue\SB@measureson}
212 \newcommand\measuresoff{\SB@measurespectrue\SB@measuresoff}
213 \newcommand\SB@measureson{%
214   \measurestrue%
215   \let\SB@mbar\SB@makembar%
216   \ifchorded%
217     \let\SB@mch\SB@mch@on%
218   \else%
219     \let\SB@mch\SB@mch@m%
220   \fi%
221   \ifSB@inverse\SB@loadactives\fi%
222   \ifSB@inchorus\SB@loadactives\fi%
223 }
224 \newcommand\SB@measuresoff{%
225   \measuresfalse%
226   \let\SB@mbar\@gobbletwo%
227   \ifchorded%
228     \let\SB@mch\SB@ch@on%
229   \else%
230     \let\SB@mch\SB@ch@off%
231   \fi%
232   \ifSB@inverse\SB@loadactives\fi%
233   \ifSB@inchorus\SB@loadactives\fi%
234 }

transposecapos (Default: off) If set, the \capo macro transposes the song instead of printing
a note to use a capo. Use this option to generate a chord book for pianists who
have trouble transposing or guitarists who don't have capos.
235 \DeclareOption{transposecapos}{\transcapostrue}

```

`noscripture` (Default: off) Inhibits the display of scripture quotes. This option can also be toggled on and off anywhere with the `\scriptureon` and `\scriptureoff` macros.

```

\scriptureon 236 \DeclareOption{noscripture}{\SB@omitscripttrue}
\scriptureoff 237 \newcommand\scriptureon{\SB@omitscriptfalse}
238 \newcommand\scriptureoff{\SB@omitscripttrue}

```

`onesongcolumn` (Default: *onesongcolumn* is the default if generating slides or rawtext, *twosongcolumns* otherwise) The number of columns per page is specified using the following package options and macros. In `rawtext` mode it must remain set to one column per page. The entire page-making system can be turned off by setting `\twosongcolumns` the number of columns to zero. This will cause each song to be contributed to the current vertical list without any attempt to form columns; the enclosing environment must handle the page layout. Probably this means that `\repchoruses` will not work, since an external package won't know to insert repeated choruses when building pages.

```

239 \DeclareOption{twosongcolumns}{\SB@numcols\tw@}
240 \DeclareOption{onesongcolumn}{\SB@numcols\@ne}
241 \newcommand\songcolumns[1]{%
242   \SB@cnt#1\relax%
243   \ifnum\SB@cnt=\SB@numcols\else%
244     \ifSB@preamble\else{\SB@clearpage}\fi%
245   \fi%
246   \SB@numcols\SB@cnt%
247   \ifnum\SB@numcols>\z@%
248     \SB@colwidth-\columnsep%
249     \multiply\SB@colwidth\SB@numcols%
250     \advance\SB@colwidth\columnsep%
251     \advance\SB@colwidth\textwidth%
252     \divide\SB@colwidth\SB@numcols%
253   \else%
254     \ifrepchorus\SB@warnrc\fi%
255   \fi%
256 }
257 \newcommand\onesongcolumn{\songcolumns\@ne}
258 \newcommand\twosongcolumns{\songcolumns\tw@}

```

`\includeonlysongs` Display only a select list of songs and ignore the rest.

```

\songlist 259 \newcommand\songlist{}
260 \newcommand\includeonlysongs[1]{%
261   \ifSB@songsenv\SB@errpl\else%
262     \partiallisttrue%
263     \renewcommand\songlist{#1}%
264   \fi%
265 }

```

`\nosongnumbers` The user can turn off song numbering with the following macro.

```

266 \newcommand\nosongnumbers{\setlength\songnumwidth\z@}

```

`\noversenumbers` The user can turn off verse numbering with the following macro.

```
267 \newcommand\noversenumbers{%
268   \renewcommand\printversenum[1]{}%
269   \setlength\versenumwidth\z@%
270 }
```

`\repchoruses` Using `\repchoruses` causes choruses to be automatically repeated on subsequent pages of the song. The feature requires ε -TeX because the supporting code needs an extended mark register class.

`\norepchoruses`

```
271 \ifSB@etex
272   \newcommand\repchoruses{%
273     \ifnum\SB@numcols<\@ne\SB@warnrc\fi%
274     \repchorustrue%
275   }
276 \else
277   \newcommand\repchoruses{\SB@erretex}
278 \fi
279 \newcommand\norepchoruses{\repchorusfalse}
```

`\sepverses` The following penalty settings cause verses and choruses to be separated onto different slides when in slides mode, except that consecutive choruses remain together when they fit.

```
280 \newcommand\sepverses{%
281   \vvpentalty-\@M%
282   \ccpenalty100 %
283   \vcpenalty\vvpentalty%
284   \cvpenalty\vvpentalty%
285   \let\colbotglue\@flushglue%
286 }
```

Some option settings, margins, and other lengths are finalized at the end of the preamble. That code is below.

```
287 \AtBeginDocument{
    If the user hasn't set the \versesep, set it to the default.
288   \SB@setversesep
    Initialize page layout algorithm.
289   \songcolumns\SB@numcols
    Macros used after this point occur outside the preamble.
290   \SB@preamblefalse
291 }
```

16.4 Page-builder

The following macros handle the building of pages that contain songs. They compute where best to place each song (e.g., whether to place it in the current column or move to the next column or page). The output routines for generating a partial list of songs in a specified order also can be found here.

`\SB@songbox` The most recently processed song (or scripture quotation) is stored in this box.
292 `\newbox\SB@songbox`

`\SB@numcols` Reserve two count registers to hold the total number of columns and the current
`\SB@colnum` column number, respectively.
293 `\newcount\SB@numcols\SB@numcols\tw@`
294 `\newcount\SB@colnum`

`\SB@colbox` Reserve a box register to hold the current column in progress.
295 `\newbox\SB@colbox`

`\SB@colbox` Reserve a box register to hold the current page in progress.
296 `\newbox\SB@pgbox`

`\SB@mrkbox` Reserve a box register to hold marks that migrate out of songs as they get split
into columns and pages.
297 `\newbox\SB@mrkbox`

`\SB@maxmin` The following helper macro takes the max or min of two dimensions. If
 $\langle arg2 \rangle = "<"$, it sets $\langle arg1 \rangle$ to the maximum of $\langle arg1 \rangle$ and $\langle arg3 \rangle$. If $\langle arg2 \rangle = ">"$,
it sets $\langle arg1 \rangle$ to the minimum of $\langle arg1 \rangle$ and $\langle arg3 \rangle$.
298 `\newcommand\SB@maxmin[3]{\ifdim#1#2#3#1#3\fi}`

`\SB@mkpage` The following macro is the heart of the page-building engine. It splits the contents
of a box into a page of columns. If `\repchoruses` is active, the contents of
`\SB@chorusbox` are additionally inserted into fresh columns created during the
splitting process. The macro arguments are:

1. the box b to split (must not be `\SB@box`, which is used as a temp register),
2. a count register i equaling column index (zero or greater) where the content
of b is to begin, and
3. the desired column height.

Box b is split and i is incremented until i reaches `\SB@numcols` or b is emptied,
whichever occurs first. If b is emptied first, the final column is *not* contributed;
instead it is left in b and i is left equal to the index of the column that would have
been added if b had been emptied. This allows the next call to reconsider whether
to end the current column here or add some or all of the next contribution to
it. Box b and count register i are globally modified. If `\SB@updatepage` is not
redefined, boxes `\SB@pgbox` and `\SB@mrkbox` are also globally modified based on
the results of the split.

299 `\newcommand\SB@mkpage[3]{%`
300 `\begingroup%`
301 `\splitmaxdepth\maxdepth\splittopskip\z@skip%`
302 `\global\setbox#1\vbox{%`
303 `\unvbox#1%`

```

304     \nointerlineskip%
305     \null%
306     \vfil%
307 }%
308 \loop\ifnum#2<\SB@numcols%
309     \setbox\SB@box\vsplit#1to#3\relax%
310     \ifvoid#1%
311         #2\SB@numcols%
312     \else%
313         \SB@updatepage%
314         \global\advance#2\@ne%
315         \ifrepchorus\ifvoid\SB@chorusbox\else%
316             \SB@insertchorus#1%
317         \fi\fi%
318     \fi%
319 \repeat%
320 \global\setbox#1\vbox{%
321     \unvbox\SB@box%
322     \unvbox#1%
323     \unskip%
324     \setbox\SB@box\lastbox%
325 }%
326 \endgroup%
327 }

```

\SB@migrate Migrate a mark out of a recently split vertical list, but do not insert superfluous empty marks that may override previous marks.

```

328 \newcommand\SB@migrate[1]{%
329     \SB@toks\expandafter{#1}%
330     \edef\SB@temp{\the\SB@toks}%
331     \ifx\SB@temp\@empty\else\mark{\the\SB@toks}\fi%
332 }

```

\SB@updatepage Update boxes \SB@pgbox and \SB@mrkbox immediately after splitting the contents of \SB@colbox.

```

333 \newcommand\SB@updatepage{%
334     \global\setbox\SB@mrkbox\vbox{%
335         \unvbox\SB@mrkbox%
336         \SB@migrate\splitfirstmark%
337         \SB@migrate\splitbotmark%
338     }%
339     \global\setbox\SB@pgbox\hbox{%
340         \SB@dimen\SB@colwidth%
341         \advance\SB@dimen\columnsep%
342         \multiply\SB@dimen\SB@colnum%
343         \advance\SB@dimen-\wd\SB@pgbox%
344         \unhbox\SB@pgbox%
345         \ifdim\SB@dimen=\z@\else\hskip\SB@dimen\relax\fi%
346         \box\SB@box%

```

```

347 }%
348 }

\SB@droppage This alternate definition of \SB@updatepage drops the just-created page instead
of contributing it. This allows \SB@mkpage to be called by the song-positioning
algorithm as a trial run without outputting anything.
349 \newcommand\SB@droppage{\setbox\SB@box\box\voidb@x}

\SB@output This is the main output routine for the page-builder. It repeatedly calls
\SB@mkpage, emitting pages as they are completed, until the remaining content of
box \SB@colbox is not enough to fill a column. This final, in-progress column is
left unfinished, pending future contributions.
350 \newcommand\SB@output{%
351   \ifnum\SB@numcols>\z@\begingroup%
352     \loop%
353       \SB@dimen\textheight%
354       \ifinner\else\advance\SB@dimen-\pagetotal\fi%
355       \SB@mkpage\SB@colbox\SB@colnum\SB@dimen%
356       \ifnum\SB@colnum<\SB@numcols\else%
357         \unvbox\SB@mrkbox%
358         \ifinner\else\kern\z@\fi%
359         \box\SB@pgbox%
360         \ifinner\else\vfil\break\vskip\vsize\relax\fi%
361         \global\SB@colnum\z@%
362       \repeat%
363   \endgroup\else%
364     \unvbox\SB@colbox\unskip%
365   \fi%
366 }

\SB@putboxes Create a vertical list consisting of the already committed contents of the current
column plus the most recently submitted song box. The LATEX primitive that
should be used to contribute each box is specified in the first argument.
367 \newcommand\SB@putboxes[1]{%
368   \SB@dimen\ifnum\SB@numcols>\z@\ht\SB@colbox\else\p@\fi%
369   #1\SB@colbox%
370   \ifdim\SB@dimen>\z@%
371     \SB@breakpoint\spenalty%
372     \ifdim\sbarheight>\z@%
373       \vskip-\sbarheight\relax%
374     \fi%
375   \fi%
376   #1\SB@songbox%
377 }

\SB@nextcol Force  $n$  column breaks, where  $n$  is given by the first argument. The first created
column is finished with the glue specified in the second argument. When the second
argument is \@flushglue, this forces a break that leaves whitespace at the bottom
of the column. When it's \colbotglue, it acts like a natural column break chosen

```

by the page-breaker. However, if the current column is empty, `\@flushglue` is always used so that an empty column will result.

```

378 \newcommand\SB@nextcol[2]{%
379   \ifnum#1>\z@%
380     \ifnum\SB@numcols>\z@%
381       \global\setbox\SB@colbox\vbox{%
382         \SB@cnt#1\relax%
383         \SB@dimen\ht\SB@colbox%
384         \unvbox\SB@colbox%
385         \unskip%
386         \ifdim\SB@dimen>\z@%
387           \vskip#2\relax%
388           \break%
389           \advance\SB@cnt\m@ne%
390         \fi%
391       \loop\ifnum\SB@cnt>\z@%
392         \nointerlineskip%
393         \null%
394         \vfil%
395         \break%
396         \advance\SB@cnt\m@ne%
397       \repeat%
398     }%
399     \SB@output%
400   \else%
401     \ifnum\lastpenalty=-\@M\null\fi%
402     \break%
403   \fi%
404 \fi%
405 }

```

`\SB@selectcol` This is the entrypoint to the song-positioning algorithm. It gets defined by `\songpos` to either `\SB@@selectcol` (below) or `\relax` (when song-positioning is turned off).

```

406 \newcommand\SB@selectcol{}

```

`\SB@@selectcol` Songs should be squeezed in wherever they fit, but breaking a column or page within a song should be avoided. The following macro outputs zero or more column breaks to select a good place for `\SB@songbox` to be contributed to the current (or the next) page. The number of column breaks is determined by temporarily setting `\SB@updatepage` to `\SB@droppage` and then calling the `\SB@mkpage` algorithm under various conditions to see how many columns it would contribute if we start the current song at various positions.

```

407 \newcommand\SB@@selectcol{%
408   \begingroup%
409   \SB@cnt\z@%
410   \vbadness\@M\vfuZZ\maxdimen%
411   \let\SB@updatepage\SB@droppage%
412   \SB@dimen\textheight%

```



```

413     \ifinner\else\advance\SB@dimen-\pagetotal\fi%
414     \setbox\SB@boxii\vbox{\SB@putboxes\unvcopy}%
415     \SB@cntii\SB@colnum%
416     \SB@mkpage\SB@boxii\SB@cntii\SB@dimen%
417     \SB@spos%
418     \global\SB@cnt\SB@cnt%
419 \endgroup%
420 \SB@nextcol\SB@cnt\colbotglue%
421 }

\SB@spbegnew Begin a trial typesetting of the current song on a fresh page to see if it fits within
a page.
422 \newcommand\SB@spbegnew{%
423   \setbox\SB@boxiii\copy\SB@songbox%
424   \SB@cntii\z@%
425   \SB@mkpage\SB@boxiii\SB@cntii\textheight%
426 }

\SB@spextold Tentatively extend the song previously typeset on the current even page to the
next odd page to see whether it fits on a double-page. If the current page is odd-
numbered, do nothing since extending the song to the next page would introduce
a page-turn.
427 \newcommand\SB@spextold{%
428   \ifodd\c@page\else%
429     \SB@cntii\z@%
430     \SB@mkpage\SB@boxii\SB@cntii\textheight%
431   \fi%
432 }

\SB@spextnew Extend the trial typesetting started with \SB@spbegnew to a second page to see
whether the song fits on a fresh double-page.
433 \newcommand\SB@spextnew{%
434   \SB@cntii\z@%
435   \SB@mkpage\SB@boxiii\SB@cntii\textheight%
436 }

\SB@spdblp Compute the number of column breaks required to shift the current song to the
next double-page if the result of the last test run fits within its page (as indicated
by counter \SB@cntii). Otherwise leave the requested number of column breaks
set to zero.
437 \newcommand\SB@spdblp{%
438   \ifnum\SB@cntii<\SB@numcols%
439     \SB@cnt\SB@numcols%
440     \advance\SB@cnt-\SB@colnum%
441     \if@twoside\ifodd\c@page\else%
442       \advance\SB@cnt\SB@numcols%
443     \fi\fi%
444   \fi%
445 }

```

`\SB@sposi` This is the level-1 song positioning algorithm. It moves songs to the next double-page only if doing so would avoid a page-turn that would otherwise appear within the song.

```

446 \newcommand\SB@sposi{%
447   \ifnum\SB@cntii<\SB@numcols\else\if@twoside%
448     \SB@spextold%
449   \fi\fi%
450   \ifnum\SB@cntii<\SB@numcols\else%
451     \SB@spbegnew%
452     \ifnum\SB@cntii<\SB@numcols\else\if@twoside%
453       \SB@spextnew%
454     \fi\fi%
455     \SB@spdblp%
456   \fi%
457 }
```

`\SB@sposii` This is the level-2 song-positioning algorithm. It moves songs to the next page or double-page if doing so avoids a page-break or page-turn that would otherwise appear within the song.

```

458 \newcommand\SB@sposii{%
459   \ifnum\SB@cntii<\SB@numcols\else%
460     \SB@spbegnew%
461     \ifnum\SB@cntii<\SB@numcols%
462       \SB@cnt\SB@numcols%
463       \advance\SB@cnt-\SB@colnum%
464     \else%
465       \if@twoside%
466         \SB@spextold%
467       \ifnum\SB@cntii<\SB@numcols\else%
468         \SB@spextnew%
469       \SB@spdblp%
470     \fi%
471   \fi%
472   \fi%
473   \fi%
474 }
```

`\SB@sposiii` This is the level-3 song-positioning algorithm. It moves songs to the next column, the next page, or the next double-page if doing so avoids a column-break, page-break, or page-turn that would otherwise appear within the song.

```

475 \newcommand\SB@sposiii{%
476   \ifnum\SB@cntii>\SB@colnum%
477     \SB@cnt\SB@colnum%
478     \advance\SB@cnt\@ne%
479     \ifnum\SB@cnt<\SB@numcols%
480       \setbox\SB@boxiii\copy\SB@songbox%
481       \SB@mkpage\SB@boxiii\SB@cnt\SB@dimen%
482       \advance\SB@cnt\m@ne%
483     \fi%
```

```

484 \ifnum\SB@cnt>\SB@colnum%
485 \SB@cnt\z@%
486 \SB@sposii%
487 \else%
488 \SB@cnt\@ne%
489 \fi%
490 \fi%
491 }

```

\songpos This is the macro by which the user adjusts the aggressiveness level of the song-positioning algorithm. See the macros above for what each level does.

```

492 \newcommand\songpos[1]{%
493 \ifcase#1%
494 \let\SB@selectcol\relax%
495 \let\SB@spos\relax%
496 \or%
497 \let\SB@selectcol\SB@@selectcol%
498 \let\SB@spos\SB@sposi%
499 \or%
500 \let\SB@selectcol\SB@@selectcol%
501 \let\SB@spos\SB@sposii%
502 \or%
503 \let\SB@selectcol\SB@@selectcol%
504 \let\SB@spos\SB@sposiii%
505 \else%
506 \SB@errspos%
507 \fi%
508 }

```

\SB@spos The **\SB@spos** macro gets redefined by **\songpos** above depending on the current song-positioning aggressiveness level. By default it is set to level 3.

```

509 \newcommand\SB@spos{}
510 \songpos\thr@@

```

\SB@clearpage Output all contributed material as a new page unless there is no contributed material. In that case do nothing (i.e., don't produce a blank page).

```

511 \newcommand\SB@clearpage{%
512 \SB@testtrue%
513 \ifvoid\SB@pgbox\ifvoid\SB@colbox\SB@testfalse\fi\fi%
514 \ifSB@test%
515 \SB@cnt\SB@numcols%
516 \advance\SB@cnt-\SB@colnum%
517 \SB@nextcol\SB@cnt\lastcolglue%
518 \fi%
519 }

```

\SB@cleardpage Like **\SB@clearpage** but shift to a fresh *even-numbered* page in two-sided documents. Note that this differs from L^AT_EX's **\cleardoublepage**, which shifts to

odd-numbered pages. Song books prefer starting things on even-numbered pages because this maximizes the distance until the next page-turn.

```
520 \newcommand\SB@clearpage{%
521   \SB@clearpage%
522   \if@twoside\ifodd\c@page%
523     \SB@nextcol\SB@numcols\@flushglue%
524   \fi\fi%
525 }
```

\SB@stype There are two song content submission types: column- and page-submissions. Page-submissions are page-width and go atop fresh pages unless the current page has only page-width material so far. Column-submissions are column-width and start a new page only when the current page is full. This macro gets set to the desired type for the current submission. Mostly it stays set to the default column-submission type.

```
526 \newcommand\SB@stype{\SB@stypcol}
```

\SB@stypcol Column-submissions contribute the contents of **\SB@songbox** to either the current column or the next column or page, depending on where it best fits.

```
527 \newcommand\SB@stypcol{%
528   \ifnum\SB@numcols>\z@%
529     \SB@selectcol%
530     \global\setbox\SB@colbox\vbox{\SB@putboxes\unvbox}%
531     \SB@output%
532   \else%
533     \unvbox\voidb@x%
534     \SB@breakpoint\spenalty%
535     \ifdim\sbarheight>\z@%
536       \vskip-\sbarheight\relax%
537     \fi%
538     \unvbox\SB@songbox%
539   \fi%
540 }
```

\SB@styppage Page-submissions go directly to the top of the nearest fresh page unless the current page has all page-width material so far.

Implementation notes: The **\null** is needed because the page builder consults **\pagetotal**, which isn't updated by **T_EX** until a box is contributed (**\unvbox** doesn't count). Both **\nointerlineskip**s are needed because **\unvbox** fails to update **\prevdepth**, and it doesn't make sense to inherit its value from whatever preceded this contribution. Authors who want interline glue must therefore insert it explicitly at the bottom of their contributed text.

```
541 \newcommand\SB@styppage{%
542   \ifnum\SB@numcols>\z@%
543     \SB@clearpage%
544     \unvbox\SB@songbox%
545     \nointerlineskip\null\nointerlineskip%
546   \else%
```

```

547     \unvbox\SB@songbox%
548   \fi%
549 }

```

\SB@sgroup This macro controls whether songs submitted to the page-builder are actually contributed to the final document when using `\includeonlysongs` to generate a partial list. If `\SB@sgroup` is empty, then the song is silently dropped. Otherwise it is contributed only if `\SB@sgroup` is a member of `\songlist`.

```

550 \newcommand\SB@sgroup{}
551 \let\SB@sgroup\@empty

```

\SB@groupcnt This counter assigns a unique integer to each item of a group. Environments that come before the group's song are numbered decreasingly from -1 . The song itself has number 0. Environments that come after the song are numbered increasingly from 1.

```

552 \newcount\SB@groupcnt

```

\SB@submitpart When a song completes and we're generating a partial list, save the song in a box so that it can be submitted at the end of the section in the order specified by `\includeonlysongs`.

```

553 \newcommand\SB@submitpart{%
554   \ifx\SB@sgroup\@empty\else%
555     \for\SB@temp:=\songlist\do{%
556       \ifx\SB@temp\SB@sgroup%
557         \edef\SB@tempii{\SB@sgroup @\the\SB@groupcnt}%
558         \expandafter\newbox\csname songbox@\SB@tempii\endcsname%
559         \global\expandafter\setbox
560           \csname songbox@\SB@tempii\endcsname\box\SB@songbox%
561         \global\expandafter\let%
562           \csname stype@\SB@tempii\endcsname\SB@stype%
563         \ifrepchorus\ifvoid\SB@chorusbox\else%
564           \expandafter\newbox\csname chbox@\SB@tempii\endcsname%
565           \global\expandafter\setbox%
566             \csname chbox@\SB@tempii\endcsname\box\SB@chorusbox%
567         \fi\fi%
568       \fi%
569     }%
570     \global\advance\SB@groupcnt%
571     \ifnum\SB@groupcnt<\z@\m@ne\else\@ne\fi%
572   \fi%
573   \setbox\SB@songbox\box\voidb@x%
574   \setbox\SB@chorusbox\box\voidb@x%
575 }

```

\SB@submitsong Submit the most recently finished song (or block of other vertical material) for output. If we're generating a partial list of songs, save it in a box instead of submitting it here. (The saved boxes will be submitted in the requested order at the end of the songs section.)

```

576 \newcommand\SB@submitsong{%
577   \ifpartiallist\SB@submitpart\else\SB@stype\fi%
578 }

```

\SB@submitenv Submit the \SB@envbox box as a page-width contribution.

```

579 \newcommand\SB@submitenv{%
580   \begingroup%
581     \let\SB@songbox\SB@envbox%
582     \SB@stypage%
583   \endgroup%
584 }

```

\SB@songlistbrk These macros define the words that, when placed in a \songlist, force a column break at that point. Using brk produces a soft break (like \brk) that won't leave whitespace at the bottom of the broken column in lyric books. Using nextcol produces a hard break (like \nextcol) that may insert whitespace to finish the column. Using sclearpage moves to the next page if the current page is nonempty. Using scleardpage moves to the next double-page if the current double-page is nonempty.

```

585 \newcommand\SB@songlistbrk{}
586 \def\SB@songlistbrk{brk}
587 \newcommand\SB@songlistnc{}
588 \def\SB@songlistnc{nextcol}
589 \newcommand\SB@songlistcp{}
590 \def\SB@songlistcp{sclearpage}
591 \newcommand\SB@songlistcdp{}
592 \def\SB@songlistcdp{scleardpage}

```

\commitsongs If we're generating only a partial list, then wait until the end of the section and then output all the songs we saved in boxes in the order specified.

```

593 \newcommand\commitsongs{%
594   \ifpartiallist%
595     \ifnum\SB@numcols>\z@%
596       \@for\SB@temp:=\songlist\do{%
597         \ifx\SB@temp\SB@songlistnc\SB@nextcol\@ne\@flushglue\else%
598         \ifx\SB@temp\SB@songlistbrk\SB@nextcol\@ne\colbotglue\else%
599         \ifx\SB@temp\SB@songlistcp\SB@clearpage\else%
600         \ifx\SB@temp\SB@songlistcdp\SB@cleardpage\else%
601           \SB@groupcnt\m@ne\SB@finloop%
602           \SB@groupcnt\z@\SB@finloop%
603         \fi\fi\fi\fi%
604       }%
605     \else%
606       \@for\SB@temp:=\songlist\do{%
607         \ifx\SB@temp\SB@songlistnc\vfil\break\else%
608         \ifx\SB@temp\SB@songlistbrk\break\else%
609         \ifx\SB@temp\SB@songlistcp\clearpage\else%
610         \ifx\SB@temp\SB@songlistcdp%
611           \clearpage%

```

```

612         \ifodd\c@page\null\newpage\fi%
613     \else%
614         \SB@groupcnt\m@ne\SB@finloop%
615         \SB@groupcnt\z@\SB@finloop%
616     \fi\fi\fi\fi%
617 }%
618 \fi%
619 \fi%
620 \SB@clearpage%
621 }

```

\SB@finloop While contributing saved material included by `\includeonlysongs`, this macro contributes each series of boxes grouped together as part of a `songgroup` environment.

```

622 \newcommand\SB@finloop{%
623   \loop\edef\SB@tempii{\SB@temp @\the\SB@groupcnt}%
624     \expandafter\ifx%
625       \csname songbox@\SB@tempii\endcsname\relax\else%
626     \setbox\SB@songbox\expandafter\box%
627       \csname songbox@\SB@tempii\endcsname%
628     \expandafter\ifx\csname chbox@\SB@tempii\endcsname\relax%
629       \repchorusfalse%
630     \else%
631       \repchorustrue%
632       \setbox\SB@chorusbox\expandafter\box%
633         \csname chbox@\SB@tempii\endcsname%
634     \fi%
635     \csname stype@\SB@tempii\endcsname%
636     \advance\SB@groupcnt\ifnum\SB@groupcnt<\z@\m@ne\else\@ne\fi%
637   \repeat%
638 }

```

\SB@insertchorus Insert a chorus into the first marked spot in the box given in the first argument. This is usually achieved by splitting the box at the first valid breakpoint after the first `\SB@cmark` in the box. The box is globally modified.

```

639 \newcommand\SB@insertchorus[1]{%
640   \vbadness\@M\vfuze\maxdimen%
641   \setbox\SB@box\copy#1%
642   \setbox\SB@box\vsplit\SB@box to\maxdimen%
643   \edef\SB@temp{\splitfirstmarks\SB@nocmarkclass}%
644   \ifx\SB@temp\SB@nocmark\else%
645     \edef\SB@temp{\splitfirstmarks\SB@cmarkclass}%
646     \ifx\SB@temp\SB@cmark%
647       \SB@dimen4096\p@%
648       \SB@dimenii\maxdimen%
649       \SB@dimeniii\SB@dimen%
650     \loop%
651       \SB@dimeniii.5\SB@dimeniii%
652     \setbox\SB@box\copy#1%

```

```

653      \setbox\SB@box\vsplit\SB@box to\SB@dimen%
654      \edef\SB@temp{\splitfirstmarks\SB@cmarkclass}%
655      \ifx\SB@temp\SB@cmark%
656        \SB@dimenii\SB@dimen%
657        \advance\SB@dimen-\SB@dimeniii%
658      \else%
659        \advance\SB@dimen\SB@dimeniii%
660      \fi%
661      \ifdim\SB@dimeniii>2\p@\repeat%
662      \setbox\SB@box\vsplit#1to\SB@dimenii%
663      \global\setbox#1\vbox{%
664        \unvbox\SB@box\unskip%
665        \SB@inversefalse\SB@prevversettrue\SB@stanzabreak%
666        \SB@putbox\unvcopy\SB@chorusbox%
667        \SB@inversetrue\SB@prevversefalse\SB@stanzabreak%
668        \unvbox#1%
669      }%

```

However, if the first mark is a `\SB@lastcmark`, it means that this chorus should go after the last verse in the song. There is no valid breakpoint there, so to get a chorus into that spot, we have to do a rather ugly hack: We pull the bottom material off the box with `\unskip`, `\unpenalty`, and `\lastbox`, then insert the chorus, then put the bottom material back on. This works because the high-level structure of the bottom material should be static. Even if the user redefines `\makepostlude`, the new definition gets put in a single box that can be manipulated with `\lastbox`. However, if we ever change the high-level structure, we need to remember to change this code accordingly.

```

670      \else\ifx\SB@temp\SB@lastcmark%
671        \global\setbox#1\vbox{%
672          \unvbox#1%
673          \unskip%
674          \ifdim\sbarheight>\z@%
675            \setbox\SB@box\lastbox%
676            \unskip\unpenalty%
677          \fi%
678          \setbox\SB@box\lastbox%
679          \unskip\unskip%
680          \SB@inversefalse\SB@prevversettrue\SB@stanzabreak%
681          \marks\SB@nocmarkclass{\SB@nocmark}%
682          \unvcopy\SB@chorusbox%
683          \vskip\versesep\vskip\beforepostludeskip\relax%
684          \nointerlineskip\box\SB@box%
685          \ifdim\sbarheight>\z@%
686            \nobreak\vskip2\p@\@plus\p@%
687            \hrule\@height\sbarheight\@width\SB@colwidth%
688          \fi%
689        }%
690      \fi\fi%
691    \fi%

```



```

692 }}

\nextcol End the current column (inserting vertical space as needed). This differs from
column breaks produced with \brk, which does not introduce any empty vertical
space.
693 \newcommand\nextcol{%
694   \@ifstar{\SB@nextcol\@ne\@flushglue}%
695   {\ifpartiallist\else\SB@nextcol\@ne\@flushglue\fi}%
696 }

\sclearpage Move to the next page if the current page is nonempty.
697 \newcommand\sclearpage{%
698   \@ifstar\SB@clearpage{\ifpartiallist\else\SB@clearpage\fi}%
699 }

\scleardpage Move to the next even-numbered page if the current page is odd or nonempty.
700 \newcommand\scleardpage{%
701   \@ifstar\SB@cleardpage{\ifpartiallist\else\SB@cleardpage\fi}%
702 }

```

16.5 Songs

The following macros handle the parsing and formatting of the material that begins and ends each song.

```

\SB@lop The following macros were adapted from Donald Knuth's The TEXbook, for ma-
\SB@@lop nipulating lists of the form \item1\item2\...\itemN\|.
\SB@emptylist 703 \newcommand\SB@lop[1]{\expandafter\SB@@lop\the#1\SB@@lop#1}
\SB@ifempty 704 \newcommand\SB@@lop{
705   \def\SB@lop\#1\#2\SB@@lop#3#4{\global#3{\#2}\global#4{#1}}
706   \newcommand\SB@emptylist{}
707   \def\SB@emptylist{\}
708   \newcommand\SB@ifempty[3]{%
709     \edef\SB@temp{\the#1}%
710     \ifx\SB@temp\SB@emptylist#2\else#3\fi%
711   }

\SB@titlelist These registers hold the full list of titles for the current song and the tail list of
\SB@titletail titles that has not yet been iterated over.
712 \newtoks\SB@titlelist
713 \newtoks\SB@titletail

\songtitle The \songtitle macro will initially hold the primary title of the current song.
The user can iterate over titles using \nexttitle or \foreachtitle.
714 \newcommand\songtitle{}

```

`\resettitles` Initialize the title list iterator.

```

715 \newcommand\resettitles{%
716   \global\SB@titletail\SB@titlelist%
717   \nexttitle%
718 }

```

`\nexttitle` Advance the title list iterator to the next title.

```

719 \newcommand\nexttitle{%
720   \SB@ifempty\SB@titletail{%
721     \global\let\songtitle\relax%
722   }{%
723     \SB@lop\SB@titletail\SB@toks%
724     \edef\songtitle{\the\SB@toks}%
725   }%
726 }

```

`\foreachtitle` Execute a block of code for each remaining title in the title list.

```

727 \newcommand\foreachtitle[1]{%
728   \ifx\songtitle\relax\else%
729     \loop#1\nexttitle\ifx\songtitle\relax\else\repeat%
730   \fi%
731 }

```

`\ifSB@insong` To help the user locate errors, keep track of which environments we're inside and immediately signal an error if someone tries to use a song command inside a scripture quotation, etc.

`\ifSB@inverse`

`\ifSB@inchorus`

```

732 \newif\ifSB@songsenv\SB@songsenvfalse
733 \newif\ifSB@insong\SB@insongfalse
734 \newif\ifSB@intersong\SB@intersongfalse
735 \newif\ifSB@inverse\SB@inversefalse
736 \newif\ifSB@inchorus\SB@inchorusfalse

```

`\SB@closeall` If an error is detected using one of the above, the following macro will contain a macro sequence sufficient to end the unclosed environment, hopefully allowing processing to continue.

```

737 \newcommand\SB@closeall{}

```

`\SB@rawrefs` The current song's scripture references, authors, copyright info, and copyright license information are stored in these macros.

`\songauthors`

`\songcopyright`

`\songlicense`

```

738 \newcommand\SB@rawrefs{}
739 \newcommand\songauthors{}
740 \newcommand\songcopyright{}
741 \newcommand\songlicense{}

```

`\songrefs` When the user asks for the song's scripture references, rather than give them the raw token list that the author entered, we return a prettier version in which spaces, dashes, and penalties have been adjusted. The prettier version is stored in the following control sequence.

```

742 \newcommand\songrefs{}

```

`\setlicense` The user sets the licensing info for the current song with this command.

```

743 \newcommand\setlicense{\gdef\songlicense}

```

`\newsongkey` Defining a new key for `\beginsong` is just like the `keyval` package's `\define@key` macro except that we must also define some initializer code for each key. This provides an opportunity to clear registers before each song. (Otherwise when a key wasn't specified, we'd inherit the old values from the previous song.)

`\SB@clearbskeys`

```

744 \newcommand\SB@clearbskeys{
745 \newcommand\newsongkey[2]{%
746   \expandafter\gdef\expandafter\SB@clearbskeys\expandafter%
747   {\SB@clearbskeys#2}%
748   \define@key{beginsong}{#1}%
749 }

```

Define keys `sr`, `by`, `cr`, `li`, `index`, and `ititle` for scripture references, authors, copyright info, licensing info, lyric index entries, and alternate title index entries, respectively.

```

750 \newsongkey{sr}{\def\SB@rawrefs{}\gdef\songrefs{}}
751       {\def\SB@rawrefs{#1}\SB@parsesrefs{#1}}
752 \newsongkey{by}{\def\songauthors{}}{\def\songauthors{#1}}
753 \newsongkey{cr}{\def\songcopyright{}}{\def\songcopyright{#1}}
754 \newsongkey{li}{\setlicense{}}{\setlicense{#1}}
755 \newsongkey{index}{\indexentry{#1}}
756 \newsongkey{ititle}{\indextitleentry{#1}}

```

`song` Parse the arguments of a `\beginsong` macro. The `\beginsong` macro supports two syntaxes. The preferred syntax takes the song title(s) as its first argument

`\begin song` and an optional keyval list in brackets as its second argument. A legacy syntax

`\SB@@beginsong` supports four arguments, all enclosed in braces, which are: the title(s), scripture

`\SB@bsoldfmt` references, authors, and copyright info.

`\SB@bskvfmt`

```

757 \newenvironment{song}{\beginsong}{\SB@endsong}
758 \newcommand\begin song[1]{%
759   \ifSB@insong\SB@errboo\SB@closeall\fi%
760   \ifSB@intersong\SB@errbor\SB@closeall\fi%
761   \SB@insongtrue%
762   \def\SB@closeall{\endsong}%
763   \SB@parsetitles{#1}%
764   \global\setbox\SB@songwrites\box\voidb@x%
765   \SB@clearbskeys%
766   \ifnextchar[\SB@bskvfmt\SB@@beginsong%
767 }
768 \newcommand\SB@@beginsong{%
769   \ifnextchar\bgroup\SB@bsoldfmt\SB@@@beginsong%
770 }
771 \newcommand\SB@bsoldfmt[3]{%
772   \SB@bskvfmt[sr={#1},by={#2},cr={#3}]%
773 }
774 \newcommand\SB@bskvfmt{}

```

```

775 \def\SB@bskvfmt[#1]{%
776   \setkeys{beginsong}{#1}%
777   \SB@@@beginsong%
778 }

```

\SB@@@beginsong Begin typesetting a song. Beginning a song involves typesetting the title and other info, adding entries to the indexes, and setting up the environment in which verses and choruses reside.

```

779 \newcommand\SB@@@beginsong{%
780   \global\SB@stanzafalse%
781   \setbox\SB@chorusbox\box\voidb@x%
782   \SB@gotchorusfalse%
783   \setbox\SB@songbox\vbox\bgroup\beginngroup%
784     \ifnum\SB@numcols>\z@\hsize\SB@colwidth\fi%
785     \leftskip\z@skip\rightskip\z@skip%
786     \parfillskip\@flushglue\parskip\z@skip%
787     \SB@raggedright%
788     \global\SB@transposefactor\z@%
789     \global\SB@cr@{\}%
790     \protected@edef\@currentlabel{\p@songnum\thesongnum}%
791     \setcounter{versenum}{1}%
792     \SB@prevversettrue%
793     \meter44%
794     \resettitles%
795     \SB@addtoindexes\songtitle\SB@rawrefs\songauthors%
796     \nexttitle%
797     \foreachtitle{\expandafter\SB@addtotitles\expandafter{\songtitle}}%
798     \resettitles%
799     \lyricfont%
800     \SB@setbaselineskip%
801 }

```

\SB@endsong Ending a song involves creating the song header (with **\makeprelude**), creating the song footer (with **\makepostlude**), and then assembling everything together into the **\SB@songbox**. The box is then submitted to the page-builder via **\SB@submitsong**. We do things this way instead of just contributing material directly to the main vertical list because submitting material song by song allows for a more sophisticated page-breaking algorithm than is possible with TeX's built-in algorithm.

```

802 \newcommand\SB@endsong{%
803   \ifSB@insong%
804     \ifSB@inverse\SB@erreov\endverse\fi%
805     \ifSB@inchorus\SB@erreoc\endchorus\fi%
806     \global\SB@skip\versesep%
807     \unskip%
808     \ifrepchorus\ifvoid\SB@chorusbox\else%
809       \ifSB@prevverse\ifvnumbered%
810         \marks\SB@cmarkclass{\SB@lastcmark}%
811       \fi\fi%

```

```

812     \fi\fi%
813 \endgroup\egroup%
814 \begingroup%
815     \ifnum\SB@numcols>\z@%
816         \hsize\ifpagepreludes\textwidth\else\SB@colwidth\fi%
817     \fi%
818     \leftskip\z@skip\rightskip\z@skip%
819     \parfillskip\@flushglue\parskip\z@skip\parindent\z@%
820     \global\setbox\SB@envbox\vbox{%
821         \songmark%
822         \unvbox\SB@songwrites%
823         \ifpagepreludes\else\ifdim\sbarheight>\z@%
824             \hrule\@height\sbarheight\@width\hsize%
825             \nobreak\vskip5\p@\relax%
826         \fi\fi%
827     \begingroup%
828         \resettitles%
829         \songtarget{\ifnum\c@section=\z@1\else2\fi}%
830             {song\theSB@songsnum-\thesongnum}%
831     \endgroup%
832     \vbox{\makeprelude}%
833     \nobreak\vskip\SB@skip%
834     \vskip\afterpreludeskip\relax%
835 }%
836 \ifnum\SB@numcols>\z@\hsize\SB@colwidth\fi%
837 \global\setbox\SB@songbox\vbox{%
838     \ifpagepreludes\else\unvbox\SB@envbox\fi%
839     \unvbox\SB@songbox%
840     \nobreak\vskip\SB@skip%
841     \vskip\beforepostludeskip\relax%
842     \nointerlineskip%
843     \vbox{\makepostlude}%
844     \ifdim\sbarheight>\z@%
845         \nobreak\vskip2\p@\@plus\p@%
846         \nointerlineskip%
847         \hbox{\vrule\@height\sbarheight\@width\hsize}%
848     \fi%
849 }%
850 \endgroup%
851 \SB@insongfalse%
852 \edef\SB@sgroup{\thesongnum}%
853 \global\SB@groupcnt\z@%
854 \ifpagepreludes\SB@submitenv\fi%
855 \SB@submitsong%
856 \ifnum\SB@grouplvl=\z@\let\SB@sgroup\@empty\fi%
857 \stepcounter{songnum}%
858 \else%
859     \ifSB@intersong\SB@erreor\SB@closeall%
860     \else\SB@erreet\fi%
861 \fi%

```

862 }

\SB@setbaselineskip Set the `\baselineskip` to an appropriate line height.

```
863 \newcommand\SB@setbaselineskip{%
864   \SB@dimen\f@size\p%
865   \baselineskip\SB@dimen\relax%
866   \ifchorded%
867     \setbox\SB@box\hbox{{\printchord{ABCDEFGF\shrp\flt/j7}}}%
868     \advance\baselineskip\ht\SB@box%
869     \advance\baselineskip2\p%
870   \fi%
871   \ifslides%
872     \advance\baselineskip.2\SB@dimen\@plus.5\SB@dimen%
873     \@minus.2\SB@dimen%
874   \else%
875     \advance\baselineskip\z@\@plus.1\SB@dimen\relax%
876   \fi%
877   \advance\baselineskip\baselineadj%
878 }
```

\SB@setversesep Set the `\versesep` to an appropriate amount if has not already been explicitly set by the user.

```
879 \newcommand\SB@setversesep{%
880   \SB@dimen123456789sp%
881   \edef\SB@temp{\the\SB@dimen}%
882   \edef\SB@tempii{\the\versesep}%
883   \ifx\SB@temp\SB@tempii%
884     \begingroup%
885       \lyricfont%
886       \SB@dimen\f@size\p%
887       \ifchorded%
888         \setbox\SB@box\hbox{{\printchord{ABCDEFGF\shrp\flt/j7}}}%
889         \advance\SB@dimen\ht\SB@box%
890       \fi%
891       \ifslides%
892         \global\versesep1.2\SB@dimen\@plus.3\SB@dimen%
893         \@minus.3\SB@dimen%
894       \else%
895         \global\versesep.75\SB@dimen\@plus.25\SB@dimen%
896         \@minus.13\SB@dimen%
897       \fi%
898     \endgroup%
899   \fi%
900 }
```

\makeprelude Generate the material that begins each song. This macro is invoked at `\endsong` so that its code can access song info defined throughout the song.

```
901 \newcommand\makeprelude{%
902   \resettitles%
```

```

903 \ifslides%
904   \hbox to\hsize{%
905     \hfil\stitlefont\songtitle\hfil%
906   }%
907   \vskip5\p@%
908   \hbox to\hsize{%
909     \hfil%
910     \vbox{%
911       \divide\hsize\tw@\parskip\p@\relax%
912       \centering\small\extendprelude%
913     }%
914     \hfil%
915   }%
916 \else%
917   \ifdim\songnumwidth>\z@%
918     \setbox\SB@boxii\hbox{\SB@colorbox\snumbgcolor{%
919       \hbox to\songnumwidth{%
920         \printsongnum{\thesongnum}\hfil%
921       }%
922     }%}%
923   \fi%
924   \setbox\SB@box\vbox{%
925     \ifdim\songnumwidth>\z@%
926       \SB@dimen\wd\SB@boxii%
927       \advance\SB@dimen3\p@%
928       \ifpagepreludes\multiply\SB@dimen\tw@\fi%
929       \advance\hsize-\SB@dimen%
930     \fi%
931     \ifpagepreludes\centering\else\SB@raggedright\fi%
932     \offinterlineskip\lineskip\p@%
933     {\stitlefont%
934       \songtitle\par%
935       \nexttitle%
936       \foreachtitle{(\songtitle)\par}}%
937     \ifdim\prevdepth=\z@\kern\p@\fi%
938     \parskip\p@\relax\tiny%
939     \extendprelude%
940     \kern\z@%
941   }%
942   \ifdim\songnumwidth>\z@%
943     \hbox{%
944       \ifdim\ht\SB@boxii>\ht\SB@box%
945         \box\SB@boxii%
946         \kern3\p@%
947         \vtop{\box\SB@box}%
948       \else%
949         \SB@colorbox\snumbgcolor{\vbox to\ht\SB@box{%
950           \hbox to\songnumwidth{%
951             \printsongnum{\thesongnum}\hfil%
952           }\vfil%

```

```

953         }}}%
954         \kern3\p@%
955         \box\SB@box%
956     \fi%
957 }%
958 \else%
959     \unvbox\SB@box%
960 \fi%
961 \fi%
962 }

```

\makepostlude Generate the material that ends each song.

```

963 \newcommand\makepostlude{%
964     \SB@raggedright\baselineskip\z@skip\parskip\z@skip\parindent\z@%
965     \tiny\extendpostlude%
966 }

```

\showauthors Display the author line in the prelude.

```

967 \newcommand\showauthors{%
968     \setbox\SB@box\hbox{\bfseries\sffcode‘.\@m\songauthors}%
969     \ifdim\wd\SB@box>\z@\unhbox\SB@box\par\fi%
970 }

```

\showrefs Display the scripture references in the prelude.

```

971 \newcommand\showrefs{%
972     \setbox\SB@box\hbox{\slshape\songrefs\vphantom,}%
973     \ifdim\wd\SB@box>\z@\unhbox\SB@box\par\fi%
974 }

```

\SB@next Several macros use **\futurelet** to look ahead in the input stream, and then take various actions depending on what is seen. In these macros, **\SB@next** is assigned the token seen, **\SB@dothis** is assigned the action to be taken on this loop iteration, and **\SB@donext** is assigned the action to be taken to continue (or terminate) the loop.

```

975 \newcommand\SB@next{}
976 \newcommand\SB@donext{}
977 \newcommand\SB@dothis{}

```

\SB@nextname Sometimes when scanning ahead we **\stringify** the name of the next token. When that happens, the name is stored in this macro for safekeeping.

```

978 \newcommand\SB@nextname{}

```

\SB@appendsp Append an explicit space token (catcode 10) to a token register. This is a useful macro to have around because inlining this code directly into a larger macro is harder than it seems: If you write the following code but with an explicit control sequence instead of **#1**, then the space immediately following the name will get stripped by the T_EX parser. But invoking the following macro with a control sequence as an argument works fine, because in that case the explicit space has

already been tokenized when this macro was first defined and won't be stripped as it is expanded.

```
979 \newcommand\SB@appendsp[1]{#1\expandafter\the#1\}
```

\SB@parsetitles Parse a list of song titles. This just involves removing leading and trailing spaces from around each title in the `\-`separated list.

```
980 \newcommand\SB@parsetitles[1]{%
981   \begingroup%
982   \global\SB@titlelist{\}%
983   \SB@toks{}%
984   \let\SB@titlesep%
985   \SB@pthead#1\SB@endparse%
986   \endgroup%
987 }
```

\SB@pthead While processing tokens at the head of a title, we skip over all spaces until we reach a non-space token. To convince `TEX` to skip spaces, we leverage the fact that `TEX`'s parser skips spaces following each `fil` in a glue specification.

```
988 \newcommand\SB@pthead{%
989   \afterassignment\SB@ptloop%
990   \SB@skip\z@\@plus\z@\@minus0pt}
```

\SB@ptloop The iterator of the title parser loop just scans the next token.

```
991 \newcommand\SB@ptloop{\futurelet\SB@next\SB@ptmain}
```

\SB@ptmain Once we've reached a non-space token in the title, we consume the remainder of the title as-is, except that space tokens should be trimmed from the end of each title.

```
992 \newcommand\SB@ptmain{%
993   \ifcat\noexpand\SB@next\@sptoken%
994     \let\SB@donext\SB@ptsp%
995   \else\ifcat\noexpand\SB@next\bgroup%
996     \let\SB@donext\SB@ptbg%
997   \else\ifx\SB@next\SB@endparse%
998     \global\SB@titlelist\expandafter\the\SB@titlelist\}%
999     \let\SB@donext\@gobble%
1000   \else\ifx\SB@next\%
1001     \SB@toks{}%
1002     \def\SB@donext{\SB@ptstep\SB@pthead}%
1003   \else%
1004     \def\SB@donext{\SB@ptstep\SB@ptloop}%
1005   \fi\fi\fi\fi%
1006   \SB@donext}
```

\SB@ptstep Consume a non-space, non-left-brace token and add it to the current song title. If any spaces preceded it, add those too.

```
1007 \newcommand\SB@ptstep[2]{%
1008   \global\SB@titlelist\expandafter\expandafter\expandafter{%
```

```

1009     \expandafter\the\expandafter\SB@titlelist\the\SB@toks#2}%
1010     \SB@toks{}%
1011     #1}

```

\SB@ptbg The next title token is a left-brace. It should be balanced, so consume the entire group and add it (along with its surrounding braces) as-is to the current title.

```

1012 \newcommand\SB@ptbg[1]{\SB@ptstep\SB@ptloop{{#1}}}

```

\SB@ptsp The next title token is a space. We won't know whether to include it in the title until we see what follows it. Strings of spaces followed by the `\` title-delimiter token, or that conclude a title argument, should be stripped. So rather than add the space token to the title, we remember it in a token register for possible later inclusion.

```

1013 \newcommand\SB@ptsp{
1014     \SB@appendsp\SB@toks%
1015     \afterassignment\SB@ptloop%
1016     \let\SB@next= }

```

\SB@titlesep While parsing song titles, we temporarily assign `\` a non-trivial top-level expansion (`\SB@titlesep`) in order to distinguish it from other macros.

```

1017 \newcommand\SB@titlesep{\SB@titlesep}

```

\SB@endparse The `\SB@endparse` token marks the end of a token sequence being parsed. If parsing works as intended, the macro should never be expanded, so produce an error if it is.

```

1018 \newcommand\SB@endparse{%
1019     \SB@Error{Title parsing failed}{This error should not occur.}%
1020 }

```

\SB@parsesrefs Assign the `\songrefs` macro a processed version of a scripture reference in which the following adjustments have been made: (1) Spaces not preceded by a comma or semicolon are made non-breaking. For example, 2 John 1:1 and Song of Solomon 1:1 become 2~John~1:1 and Song~of~Solomon~1:1, respectively. (2) Spaces between a semicolon and a book name are lengthened to en-spaces. (3) Single hyphens are lengthened to en-dashes (–). (4) Non-breaking, thin spaces are appended to commas not followed by a space. For example John 3:16,17 becomes John~3:16,\nobreak\thinspace17. (5) Everything within an explicit group is left unchanged, allowing the user to suppress all of the above as desired.

To achieve this, we must change all commas, hyphens, and spaces in the scripture reference into active characters. Unfortunately, the catcodes of everything in the text were set back when the full keyval list was digested as an argument to `\beginsong`, so we must unset and reset the catcodes. One obvious solution is to use `\scantokens` from ε -T_EX to do this, but that doesn't allow us to suppress the re-catcoding process within groups, and we'd like to avoid introducing features that require ε -T_EX anyway for compatibility reasons. Therefore, we build the following small scanner instead.

The scanner walks through the text token by token, replacing each important token by its active equivalent. No character codes are modified during this process and no tokens are inserted because some of these tokens might end up being arguments to multi-byte unicode character macros rather than being expanded directly. The `inputenc` package only cares about the character codes, not the category codes, so modifying only the category codes should be safe.

```

1021 \newcommand\SB@parsesrefs[1]{%
1022   \beginingroup%
1023   \SB@toks{\beginingroup\SB@sractives}%
1024   \SB@prloop#1\SB@endparse%
1025   \xdef\songrefs{\the\SB@toks\endgroup}%
1026   \endgroup%
1027 }
```

`\SB@prloop` The main loop of the scripture reference scanner identifies each space, hyphen, `\SB@prstep` and comma for special treatment.

```

\SB@prstep 1028 \newcommand\SB@prloop{\futurelet\SB@next\SB@prstep}
1029 \newcommand\SB@prstep{%
1030   \ifcat\noexpand\SB@next A%
1031   \expandafter\SB@prcpy%
1032   \else%
1033   \expandafter\SB@@prstep%
1034   \fi%
1035 }
1036 \newcommand\SB@@prstep{%
1037   \ifcat\noexpand\SB@next\@sptoken%
1038   \let\SB@donext\SB@prspace%
1039   \else\ifx\SB@next-%
1040   \let\SB@donext\SB@prhyphen%
1041   \else\ifx\SB@next,%
1042   \let\SB@donext\SB@prcomma%
1043   \else\ifx\SB@next\SB@endparse
1044   \let\SB@donext\@gobble%
1045   \else\ifcat\noexpand\SB@next\bgroup%
1046   \let\SB@donext\SB@prgr%
1047   \else%
1048   \let\SB@donext\SB@prcpy%
1049   \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
1050   \SB@donext%
1051 }
```

`\SB@prcpy` Anything that isn't one of the special tokens above, and anything in a group, is `\SB@prgr` copied without modification.

```

1052 \newcommand\SB@prcpy[1]{\SB@toks\expandafter{\the\SB@toks#1}\SB@prloop}
1053 \newcommand\SB@prgr[1]{\SB@toks\expandafter{\the\SB@toks{#1}}\SB@prloop}
```

`\SB@prcomma` Commas and hyphens are replaced with active equivalents.

```

\SB@prhyphen 1054 \newcommand\SB@prcomma[1]{%
1055   {\catcode',\active
```

```

1056 \gdef\SB@prcomma#1{\SB@toks\expandafter{\the\SB@toks,}\SB@prloop}}
1057 \newcommand\SB@prhyphen[1]{%
1058 {\catcode'\active
1059 \gdef\SB@prhyphen#1{\SB@toks\expandafter{\the\SB@toks-}\SB@prloop}}

\SB@prspace Spaces are made active as well, but doing so requires some specialized code since
\SB@@prspace they cannot be consumed as implicit macro arguments.
1060 \newcommand\SB@prspace[1]{%
1061 {\obeyspaces
1062 \gdef\SB@prspace{\SB@toks\expandafter{\the\SB@toks_}\SB@@prspace}}
1063 \newcommand\SB@@prspace{\afterassignment\SB@prloop\let\SB@temp= }

\SB@sractives Assign macro definitions to active commas, hyphens, spaces, and returns when the
token list generated by \SB@parsesrefs is used to typeset a scripture reference
list.
1064 \newcommand\SB@sractives{%
1065 {\catcode'\active\catcode'\active\obeyspaces%
1066 \gdef\SB@sractives{%
1067 \let,\SB@srcomma\let-\SB@srhyphen\let_\SB@srspace%
1068 \SB@srspacing}%
1069 }

\SB@srspacing The space factors of semicolons and commas are what the active spaces within a
scripture reference text use to decide what came before. The following sets them
to their default values in case they have been changed, but sets all other space
factors to 1000.
1070 \newcommand\SB@srspacing{%
1071 \nonfrenchspacing\sfcode'\;=1500\sfcode'\,=1250\relax%
1072 }

\SB@srcomma Commas not already followed by whitespace are appended with a thin, non-
\SB@@srcomma breaking space.
1073 \newcommand\SB@srcomma{\futurelet\SB@next\SB@@srcomma}
1074 \newcommand\SB@@srcomma{%
1075 \ifx\SB@next\SB@srspace\else%
1076 \nobreak\thinspace%
1077 \fi%
1078 }

\SB@srhyphen Hyphens that are not already part of a ligature (an en- or em-dash) become en-
\SB@@srhyphen dashes.
\SB@srdash 1079 \newcommand\SB@srhyphen{\futurelet\SB@next\SB@@srhyphen}
\SB@@srdash 1080 \newcommand\SB@@srhyphen{%
1081 \ifx\SB@next\SB@srhyphen\expandafter\SB@srdash\else--\fi%
1082 }
1083 \newcommand\SB@srdash[1]{\futurelet\SB@next\SB@@srdash}
1084 \newcommand\SB@@srdash{%
1085 \ifx\SB@next\SB@srhyphen---\expandafter\@gobble\else--\fi%
1086 }

```

`\SB@srspace` To compress consecutive whitespace, we ignore spaces immediately followed by
`\SB@@srspace` more whitespace. Spaces not preceded by a semicolon or comma become non-breaking. Most spaces following a semicolon become en-spaces with favorable breakpoints, but a special case arises for spaces between a semicolon and a digit (see `\SB@srcso` below).

```

1087 \newcommand\SB@srspace{\futurelet\SB@next\SB@@srspace}
1088 \newcommand\SB@@srspace{%
1089   \let\SB@donext\relax%
1090   \ifx\SB@next\SB@srspace\else%
1091     \ifnum\spacefactor>\@m%
1092       \ifnum\spacefactor>1499 %
1093         \ifcat\noexpand\SB@next0%
1094           \let\SB@donext\SB@srcso%
1095         \else%
1096           \penalty-5\enskip%
1097         \fi%
1098       \else%
1099         \space%
1100       \fi%
1101     \else%
1102       \nobreak\space%
1103     \fi%
1104   \fi%
1105   \SB@donext%
1106 }

```

`\SB@srcso` A space between a semicolon and a digit could be within a list of verse references
`\SB@@srcso` for a common book (e.g., Job 1:1; 2:2); or it could separate the previous book from a new book whose name starts with a number (e.g., Job 1:1; 1 John 1:1). In the former case, we should just use a regular space; but in the latter case we should be using an en-space with a favorable breakpoint. To distinguish between the two, we peek ahead at the next two tokens. If the second one is a space, assume the latter; otherwise assume the former.

```

1107 \newcommand\SB@srcso[1]{\futurelet\SB@temp\SB@@srcso}
1108 \newcommand\SB@@srcso{%
1109   \ifx\SB@temp\SB@srspace%
1110     \penalty-5\enskip%
1111   \else%
1112     \space%
1113   \fi%
1114   \SB@next%
1115 }

```

16.6 Verses and Choruses

The following programming typesets song contents, including verses, choruses, and textual notes.

`\ifSB@stanza` The following conditional remembers if we've seen any stanzas yet in the current song.

```
1116 \newif\ifSB@stanza
```

`\SB@stanzabreak` End this song stanza and start a new one.

```
1117 \newcommand\SB@stanzabreak{%
1118   \ifhmode\par\fi%
1119   \ifSB@stanza%
1120     \SB@breakpoint{%
1121       \ifSB@inverse%
1122         \ifSB@prevverse\vvpentalty\else\cvpentalty\fi%
1123       \else%
1124         \ifSB@prevverse\vcpentalty\else\ccpentalty\fi%
1125       \fi%
1126     }%
1127     \vskip\versesep%
1128   \fi%
1129 }
```

`\SB@breakpoint` Insert a valid breakpoint into the vertical list comprising a song.

```
1130 \newcommand\SB@breakpoint[1]{%
1131   \begingroup%
1132   \ifnum#1<\@M%
1133     \SB@skip\colbotglue\relax%
1134     \SB@skip-\SB@skip%
1135   \else%
1136     \SB@skip\z@skip%
1137   \fi%
1138   \advance\SB@skip\lastskip%
1139   \unskip%
1140   \nobreak%
1141   \ifnum#1<\@M%
1142     \vskip\colbotglue\relax%
1143     \penalty#1%
1144   \fi%
1145   \vskip\SB@skip%
1146 \endgroup%
1147 }
```

`\SB@putbox` Unbox a vbox and follow it by vertical glue if its depth is unusually shallow. This ensures that verses and choruses will look equally spaced even if one of them has a final line with no descenders.

```
1148 \newcommand\SB@putbox[2]{%
1149   \begingroup%
1150   \SB@dimen\dp#2%
1151   #1#2%
1152   \setbox\SB@box\hbox{{\lyricfont p}}%
1153   \ifdim\SB@dimen<\dp\SB@box%
1154     \advance\SB@dimen-\dp\SB@box%
```

```

1155     \vskip-\SB@dimen%
1156     \fi%
1157     \setbox\SB@box\box\voidb@x%
1158 \endgroup%
1159 }

```

\SB@obeylines Within verses and choruses we would like to use `\obeylines` so that each *<return>* in the source file ends a paragraph without having to say `\par` explicitly. The L^AT_EX base code establishes the convention that short-term changes to `\par` will restore `\par` by setting it equal to `\@par`. Long-term (i.e., environment-long) changes to `\par` should therefore redefine `\@par` to restore the desired long-term definition. The following code starts a long-term redefinition of `\par` adhering to these conventions, and extends that definition to *<return>* as well.

```

1160 \newcommand\SB@obeylines{%
1161   \let\par\SB@par%
1162   \obeylines%
1163   \let\@par\SB@@par%
1164 }

```

\SB@par The following replacement definition of `\par` constructs paragraphs in which page-breaks are disallowed, since no wrapped line in a song should span a page- or column-break. It then inserts an interlinepenalty after the paragraph so that such penalties will appear between consecutive lines in each verse. (Note: The `\endgraf` macro must not be uttered within a local group since this prevents parameters like `\hangindent` from being reset at the conclusion of each paragraph.)

```

1165 \newcommand\SB@par{%
1166   \ifhmode%
1167     \SB@cnt\interlinepenalty%
1168     \interlinepenalty\@M%
1169     \endgraf%
1170     \interlinepenalty\SB@cnt%
1171     \ifSB@inchorus%
1172       \ifdim\cbarwidth>\z@\nobreak\else\SB@ilpenalty\fi%
1173     \else%
1174       \SB@ilpenalty%
1175     \fi%
1176   \fi%
1177 }

```

\SB@ilpenalty By default, breaking a vertical list between paragraphs incurs a penalty of zero. Thus, we only insert an explicit penalty between lines if `\interlinepenalty` is non-zero. This avoids cluttering the vertical list with superfluous zero penalties.

```

1178 \newcommand\SB@ilpenalty{%
1179   \ifnum\interlinepenalty=\z@\else%
1180     \penalty\interlinepenalty%
1181   \fi%
1182 }

```

`\SB@@par` This replacement definition of `\@par` restores the `\SB@par` definition of `\par` and then ends the paragraph.

```
1183 \newcommand\SB@@par{\let\par\SB@par\par}
```

`\SB@parindent` Reserve a length to remember the current `\parindent`.

```
1184 \newdimen\SB@parindent
```

`\SB@everypar` Reserve a control sequence to hold short-term changes to `\everypar`.

```
1185 \newcommand\SB@everypar{}
```

`\SB@raggedright` Perform `\raggedright` except don't nuke the `\parindent`.

```
1186 \newcommand\SB@raggedright{%
1187   \SB@parindent\parindent%
1188   \raggedright%
1189   \parindent\SB@parindent%
1190 }
```

`\vnumbered` The following conditional remembers whether this verse is being numbered or not (i.e., it distinguishes between `\beginverse` and `\beginverse*`).

```
1191 \newif\ifvnumbered
```

`\ifSB@prevverse` Reserve a conditional to remember if the previous block in this song was a verse.

```
1192 \newif\ifSB@prevverse
```

Before replacing the little-used `verse` environment with a new one, issue a warning if the current definition of `\verse` is not the L^AT_EX-default one. This may indicate a package clash.

```
1193 \CheckCommand\verse{%
1194   \let\\\@centercr%
1195   \list{}{%
1196     \itemsep\z@%
1197     \itemindent-1.5em%
1198     \listparindent\itemindent%
1199     \rightmargin\leftmargin%
1200     \advance\leftmargin1.5em%
1201   }%
1202   \item\relax%
1203 }
```

`verse` Begin a new verse. This can be done by beginning a `verse` environment or by using the `\beginverse` macro. The latter must check for a trailing star to determine whether this verse should be numbered. We use `\@ifstar` to scan ahead for the star, but this needs to be done carefully because while scanning we might encounter tokens that should be assigned different catcodes once the verse really begins. Thus, we temporarily invoke `\SB@loadactives` for the duration of `\@ifstar` so that everything gets the right catcode.

```
1204 \renewenvironment{verse}
1205   {\vnumberedtrue\SB@beginverse}
```



```

1206   {\SB@endverse}
1207 \newenvironment{verse*}
1208   {\vnumberedfalse\SB@beginverse}
1209   {\SB@endverse}
1210 \newcommand\beginverse{%
1211   \begingroup%
1212     \SB@loadactives%
1213     \@ifstar{\endgroup\vnumberedfalse\SB@beginverse}%
1214             {\endgroup\vnumberedtrue\SB@beginverse}%
1215 }

```

\SB@beginverse Start the body of a verse. We begin by inserting a mark if **\repchoruses** is active and this verse was preceded by a numbered verse (making this an eligible place to insert a chorus later).

Verse numbering is implemented using **\everypar** so that if there is any vertical material between the **\beginverse** and the first line of the verse, that material will come before the verse number. Intervening horizontal material (e.g., **\textnote**) can temporarily clear **\everypar** to defer the verse number until later.

```

1216 \newcommand\SB@beginverse{%
1217   \ifSB@insong%
1218     \ifSB@inverse\SB@errbv\endverse\fi%
1219     \ifSB@inchorus\SB@errbvc\endchorus\fi%
1220   \else%
1221     \SB@errbvt\beginsong{Unknown Song}%
1222   \fi%
1223   \ifrepchorus\ifvoid\SB@chorusbox\else%
1224     \SB@gotchorustrue%
1225     \ifSB@prevverse\ifvnumbered%
1226       \marks\SB@cmarkclass{\SB@cmark}%
1227     \fi\fi%
1228   \fi\fi%
1229   \SB@inversetrue%
1230   \def\SB@closeall{\endverse\endsong}%
1231   \SB@stanzabreak%
1232   \versemark\nobreak%
1233   \global\SB@stanzatrue%
1234   \SB@ifempty\SB@cr@\memorize{\replay[]}%
1235   \setbox\SB@box\vbox\bgroup\begingroup%
1236     \ifvnumbered%
1237       \protected@edef\@currentlabel{\p@versenum\theversenum}%
1238       \def\SB@everypar{%
1239         \setbox\SB@box\hbox{%
1240           \printversenum{\theversenum}%
1241         }%
1242         \ifdim\wd\SB@box<\versenumwidth%
1243           \setbox\SB@box%
1244             \hbox to\versenumwidth{\unhbox\SB@box\hfil}%
1245         \fi%
1246         \ifchorded\vrule\@height\baselineskip\@width\z@\@depth\z@\fi%

```

```

1247      {\placeversenum\SB@box}%
1248      \gdef\SB@everypar{}%
1249    }%
1250  \else%
1251    \def\SB@everypar{%
1252      \ifchorded\vrule\@height\baselineskip\@width\z@\@depth\z@\fi%
1253      \gdef\SB@everypar{}%
1254    }%
1255  \fi%
1256  \everypar{\SB@everypar\everypar{}}%
1257  \versefont\versejustify%
1258  \SB@loadactives%
1259  \SB@obeylines%
1260  \penalty12345 %
1261  \everyverse\relax%
1262 }

```

\SB@endverse End a verse. This involves unboxing the verse material with **\SB@putbox**, which corrects for last lines that are unusually shallow.

```

1263 \newcommand\SB@endverse{%
1264   \ifSB@insong%
1265     \ifSB@inverse%
1266       \unpenalty%
1267       \endgroup\egroup%
1268       \SB@putbox\unvbox\SB@box%
1269       \SB@inversefalse%
1270       \def\SB@closeall{\endsong}%
1271       \ifvnumbered\stepcounter{versenum}\fi%
1272       \SB@prevversetrue%
1273     \else\ifSB@inchorus\SB@errevc\endchorus%
1274     \else\SB@errevo\fi\fi%
1275   \else%
1276     \SB@errevt%
1277   \fi%
1278 }

```

\ifSB@chorustop When a chorus is broken in to several pieces by column-breaks (via **\brk**), the following conditional remembers whether the current piece is the topmost one for this chorus.

```
1279 \newif\ifSB@chorustop
```

\SB@chorusbox When **\repchoruses** is used, the first sequence of consecutive choruses is remembered in the following box register.

```
1280 \newbox\SB@chorusbox
```

\ifSB@gotchorus The following conditional remembers whether we've completed storing the first block of consecutive choruses.

```
1281 \newif\ifSB@gotchorus
```

`\SB@cmackclass` The `\repeatchoruses` feature requires the use of two extended mark classes provided by ε -TeX. We use the `\newmarks` macro to allocate these classes, if it's available. If `\newmarks` doesn't exist, then that means the user has an ε -TeX compatible version of L^AT_EX, but no `etex` style file to go with it; we just have to pick two mark classes and hope that nobody else is using them.

```

1282 \ifSB@etex
1283   \@ifundefined{newmarks}{
1284     \@ifundefined{newmark}{
1285       \mathchardef\SB@cmackclass83
1286       \mathchardef\SB@nocmarkclass84
1287     }{
1288       \newmark\SB@cmackclass
1289       \newmark\SB@nocmarkclass
1290     }
1291   }{
1292     \newmarks\SB@cmackclass
1293     \newmarks\SB@nocmarkclass
1294   }
1295 \fi

```

`\SB@cmack` To determine where choruses should be inserted when `\repchoruses` is active, three kinds of marks are inserted into song boxes: `\SB@cmack` is used to mark places where a chorus might be inserted between verses, and `\SB@lastcmack` marks a place where a chorus might be inserted after the last verse of the song. Both marks are ε -TeX marks of class `\SB@cmackclass`, to avoid disrupting the use of standard T_EX marks. Each time a chorus is automatically inserted, `\SB@nocmark` is inserted with mark class `\SB@nocmarkclass` just above it (and at the top of each additional page it spans). This inhibits future chorus inserts until the already-inserted chorus has been fully committed to the output file. Otherwise some choruses could get auto-inserted multiple times at the same spot, possibly even leading to an infinite loop!

```

1296 \newcommand\SB@cmack{}
1297 \def\SB@cmack{\SB@cmack}
1298 \newcommand\SB@lastcmack{}
1299 \def\SB@lastcmack{\SB@lastcmack}
1300 \newcommand\SB@nocmark{}
1301 \def\SB@nocmark{\SB@nocmark}

```

`chorus` Start a new chorus. If `\repchoruses` is active and this is part of the first set of consecutive choruses in the song, then include it and its preceding vertical material in the `\SB@chorusbox` for possible later duplication elsewhere.

```

1302 \newenvironment{chorus}{\beginchorus}\SB@endchorus}
1303 \newcommand\beginchorus{%
1304   \ifSB@insong
1305     \ifSB@inverse\SB@errbcv\endverse\fi%
1306     \ifSB@inchorus\SB@errbcc\endchorus\fi%
1307   \else%
1308     \SB@errbct\begin-song{Unknown Song}%

```

```

1309 \fi%
1310 \SB@inchorustrue%
1311 \def\SB@closeall{\endchorus\endsong}%
1312 \SB@chorustoptrue%
1313 \vnumberedfalse%
1314 \SB@stanzabreak%
1315 \chorusmark%
1316 \ifrepchorus%
1317 \ifSB@gotchorus\else\ifSB@prevverse\else%
1318 \global\setbox\SB@chorusbox\vbox{%
1319 \unvbox\SB@chorusbox%
1320 \SB@stanzabreak%
1321 \chorusmark%
1322 }%
1323 \fi\fi%
1324 \fi%
1325 \global\SB@stanzatrue%
1326 \replay[]%
1327 \SB@@beginchorus%
1328 \everychorus\relax%
1329 }

```

\SB@@beginchorus Begin the body of a chorus, or continue the body of a chorus after `\brk` has paused it to insert a valid breakpoint. We insert an empty class-`\SB@cmarkclass` mark here so that this chorus will not be duplicated elsewhere on the same page(s) where it initially appears.

```

1330 \newcommand\SB@@beginchorus{%
1331 \ifrepchorus\marks\SB@cmarkclass{}\fi%
1332 \setbox\SB@box\vbox\bgroup\begingroup%
1333 \ifchorded%
1334 \def\SB@everypar{%
1335 \vrule\@height\baselineskip\@width\z@\@depth\z@%
1336 \gdef\SB@everypar{}%
1337 }%
1338 \everypar{\SB@everypar\everypar{}}%
1339 \fi%
1340 \chorusfont\chorusjustify%
1341 \SB@loadactives%
1342 \SB@obeylines%
1343 \penalty12345 %
1344 }

```

\SB@endchorus End a chorus. This involves creating the vertical line to the left of the chorus and then unboxing the chorus material that was previously accumulated.

```

1345 \newcommand\SB@endchorus{%
1346 \ifSB@insong%
1347 \ifSB@inchorus%
1348 \unpenalty%
1349 \endgroup\egroup%

```

```

1350 \SB@inchorusfalse%
1351 \def\SB@closeall{\endsong}%
1352 \setbox\SB@box\vbox{%
1353 \SB@chorusbar\SB@box%
1354 \SB@putbox\unvbox\SB@box%
1355 }
1356 \ifrepchorus\ifSB@gotchorus\else%
1357 \global\setbox\SB@chorusbox\vbox{%
1358 \unvbox\SB@chorusbox%
1359 \unvcopy\SB@box%
1360 }%
1361 \fi\fi%
1362 \unvbox\SB@box%
1363 \SB@prevversefalse%
1364 \else\ifSB@inverse\SB@errecv\endverse%
1365 \else\SB@erreco\fi\fi%
1366 \else%
1367 \SB@errect%
1368 \fi%
1369 }

```

\SB@cbarshift Increase \leftskip to accommodate the chorus bar, if any.

```

1370 \newcommand\SB@cbarshift{%
1371 \ifSB@inchorus\ifdim\cbarwidth>\z@%
1372 \advance\leftskip\cbarwidth%
1373 \advance\leftskip5\p@\relax%
1374 \fi\fi%
1375 }

```

\SB@chorusbar Create the vertical bar that goes to the left of a chorus. Rather than boxing up the chorus in order to put the bar to the left, the bar is introduced as leaders directly into the vertical list of the main song box. This allows it to stretch and shrink when a column is typeset by the page-builder.

```

1376 \newcommand\SB@chorusbar[1]{%
1377 \ifdim\cbarwidth>\z@%
1378 \SB@dimen\ht#1%
1379 \SB@dimenii\dp#1%
1380 \advance\SB@dimen%
1381 \ifSB@chorustop\ifchorded\else2\fi\fi\SB@dimenii%
1382 \SB@skip\SB@dimen\relax%
1383 \SB@computess\SB@skip1\@plus#1%
1384 \SB@computess\SB@skip{-1}\@minus#1%
1385 \nointerlineskip\null\nobreak%
1386 \leaders\vrule\@width\cbarwidth\vskip\SB@skip%
1387 \ifSB@chorustop\ifchorded\else%
1388 \advance\SB@skip-\SB@dimenii%
1389 \fi\fi%
1390 \nobreak\vskip-\SB@skip%
1391 \fi%
1392 }

```

`\SB@computess` This computes the stretchability or shrinkability of a vbox and stores the result in the skip register given by $\langle arg1 \rangle$. If $\langle arg2 \rangle = 1$ and $\langle arg3 \rangle$ is “plus”, then the stretchability of box $\langle arg4 \rangle$ is added to the plus component of $\langle arg1 \rangle$. If $\langle arg2 \rangle = -1$ and $\langle arg3 \rangle$ is “minus”, then the shrinkability of the box is added to the minus component of $\langle arg1 \rangle$. If the stretchability or shrinkability is infinite, then we guess 1fil for that component.

```

1393 \newcommand\SB@computess[4]{%
1394   \begingroup%
1395     \vbadness\@M\vfuze\maxdimen%
1396     \SB@dimen4096\p%
1397     \setbox\SB@box\vbox spread#2\SB@dimen{\unvcopy#4}%
1398     \ifnum\badness=\z@%
1399       \global\advance#1\z@#31fil\relax%
1400     \else%
1401       \SB@dimenii\SB@dimen%
1402       \loop%
1403         \SB@dimenii.5\SB@dimenii%
1404         \ifnum\badness<100 %
1405           \advance\SB@dimen\SB@dimenii%
1406         \else
1407           \advance\SB@dimen-\SB@dimenii%
1408         \fi%
1409         \setbox\SB@box\vbox spread#2\SB@dimen{\unvcopy#4}%
1410         \ifnum\badness=100 \SB@dimenii\z@\fi%
1411         \ifdim\SB@dimenii>.1\p@\repeat%
1412         \ifdim\SB@dimen<.1\p@\SB@dimen\z@\fi%
1413         \global\advance#1\z@#3\SB@dimen\relax%
1414       \fi%
1415   \endgroup%
1416 }
```

`\brk` Placing `\brk` within a line in a verse or chorus tells T_EX to break the line at that point (if it needs to be broken at all).

Placing `\brk` on a line by itself within a chorus stops the chorus (and its vertical bar), inserts a valid breakpoint, and then restarts the chorus with no intervening space so that if the breakpoint isn’t used, there will be no visible effect. Placing it on a line by itself within a verse just inserts a breakpoint.

Placing `\brk` between songs forces a column- or page-break, but only if generating a non-partial list of songs. When generating a partial list, `\brk` between songs is ignored.

```

1417 \newcommand\brk{%
1418   \ifSB@insong%
1419     \ifhmode\penalty-5 \else%
1420       \unpenalty%
1421     \ifSB@inchorus%
1422       \ifdim\cbarwidth=\z@%
1423         \ifrepchorus\marks\SB@cmarkclass{}\fi%
1424       \SB@breakpoint\brkpenalty%
```

```

1425         \else%
1426         \endgroup\egroup%
1427         \ifrepchorus\ifSB@gotchorus\else%
1428         \global\setbox\SB@chorusbox\vbox{%
1429         \unvbox\SB@chorusbox%
1430         \SB@chorusbar\SB@box%
1431         \unvcopy\SB@box%
1432         \SB@breakpoint\brkpenalty%
1433         }%
1434         \fi\fi%
1435         \SB@chorusbar\SB@box%
1436         \unvbox\SB@box%
1437         \SB@breakpoint\brkpenalty%
1438         \SB@chorustopfalse%
1439         \SB@@beginchorus%
1440         \fi%
1441     \else%
1442         \SB@breakpoint\brkpenalty%
1443     \fi%
1444 \fi%
1445 \else%
1446     \ifpartiallist\else\SB@nextcol\@ne\colbotglue\fi%
1447 \fi%
1448 }

```

\SB@boxup Typeset a shaded box containing a textual note to singers or musicians. We first try typesetting the note on a single line. If it's too big, then we try again in paragraph mode with full justification.

```

1449 \newcommand\SB@boxup[1]{%
1450   \setbox\SB@box\hbox{\fontfont#1}}%
1451   \SB@dimen\wd\SB@box%
1452   \advance\SB@dimen6\p@%
1453   \advance\SB@dimen\leftskip%
1454   \advance\SB@dimen\rightskip%
1455   \ifdim\SB@dimen>\hsize%
1456     \vbox{%
1457       \advance\hsize-6\p@%
1458       \advance\hsize-\leftskip%
1459       \advance\hsize-\rightskip%
1460       \notejustify%
1461       \unhbox\SB@box\par%
1462       \kern\z@%
1463     }%
1464   \else%
1465     \vbox{\box\SB@box\kern\z@}%
1466   \fi%
1467 }

```

\textnote Create a textual note for singers and musicians. If the note begins a verse or chorus, it should not be preceded by any spacing. Verses and choruses begin with

the sentinel penalty 12345, so we check `\lastpenalty` to identify this case. When typesetting the note, we must be sure to temporarily clear `\everypar` to inhibit any verse numbering that might be pending. We also readjust the `\baselineskip` as if we weren't doing chords, since no chords go above a textual note.

```

1468 \newcommand\textnote[1]{%
1469   \ifhmode\par\fi%
1470   \ifnum\lastpenalty=12345\else%
1471     \ifSB@inverse%
1472       \vskip2\p@\relax%
1473     \else\ifSB@inchorus%
1474       \vskip2\p@\relax%
1475     \else\ifSB@stanza%
1476       \nobreak\vskip\versesep%
1477     \fi\fi\fi%
1478   \fi%
1479   \begingroup%
1480     \everypar{}%
1481     \ifchorded\chordedfalse\SB@setbaselineskip\chordedtrue\fi%
1482     \placenote{\SB@colorbox\notebgcolor{\SB@boxup{#1}}}%
1483   \endgroup%
1484   \nobreak%
1485   \ifSB@inverse%
1486     \vskip2\p@\relax%
1487   \else\ifSB@inchorus%
1488     \vskip2\p@\relax%
1489   \else\ifSB@stanza\else%
1490     \nobreak\vskip\versesep%
1491   \fi\fi\fi%
1492 }
```

`\musicnote` Create a textual note for musicians.

```

1493 \newcommand\musicnote[1]{\ifchorded\textnote{#1}\fi}
```

`\echo` Typeset an echo part in the lyrics. Echo parts will be oblique and parenthesized.

`\SB@echo` We toggle between oblique and upright shapes like `\emph`, but we use `\slshape` instead of `\itshape` because it tends to look nicer with the larger fonts used in slides mode.

The `\echo` macro must be able to accept chords in its argument. This complicates the implementation because chord macros should change catcodes, but if we grab `\echo`'s argument in the usual way then all the catcodes will be set before the chord macros have a chance to change them. This would disallow chord name abbreviations like `#` and `&` within `\echo` parts.

If we're using ε -TeX then the solution is easy: we use `\scantokens` to rescan the argument and thereby re-assign the catcodes. (One subtlety: Whenever L^AT_EX consumes an argument to a macro, it changes `#` to `##` so that when the argument text is substituted into the body of the macro, the replacement text will not contain unsubstituted parameters (such as `#1`). If `\scantokens` is used on the replacement text and the scanned tokens assign a new catcode to `#`, that

causes #’s to be doubled in the *output*, which was not the intent. To avoid this problem, we use `\@sanitize` before consuming the argument to `\echo`, which sets the catcodes of most special tokens (including #) to 12, so that L^AT_EX will not recognize any of them as parameters and will therefore not double any of them.)

```

1494 \ifSB@etex
1495   \newcommand\echo{\begingroup\@sanitize\SB@echo}
1496   \newcommand\SB@echo[1]{%
1497     \endgroup%
1498     \begingroup%
1499       \ifdim\fontdimen\@ne\font>\z@\upshape\else\slshape\fi%
1500       \endlinechar\m@ne%
1501       \scantokens{(#1)}%
1502     \endgroup%
1503   }
1504 \else

```

If we’re not using ε -T_EX, we must do something more complicated. We set up the appropriate font within a local group and finish with `\hbox` so that the argument to `\echo` is treated as the body of the box. Control is reacquired after the box using `\aftergroup`, whereupon we unbox the box and insert the closing parenthesis. This almost works except that if the last thing in an echo part is a long chord name atop a short lyric, the closing parenthesis will float out away from the lyric instead of being sucked under the chord. I can find no solution to this problem, so to avoid it users must find a version of L^AT_EX that is ε -T_EX compatible.

```

1505   \newcommand\echo{%
1506     \begingroup%
1507       \ifdim\fontdimen\@ne\font>\z@\upshape\else\slshape\fi%
1508       \afterassignment\SB@echo%
1509       \setbox\SB@box\hbox%
1510     }
1511   \newcommand\SB@echo{\aftergroup\SB@@echo{}}
1512   \newcommand\SB@@echo{\unhbox\SB@box}\endgroup}
1513 \fi

```

`\rep` Place `\rep{⟨n⟩}` at the end of a line to indicate that it should be sung ⟨*n*⟩ times.

```

1514 \newcommand\rep[1]{%
1515   (\raise.25ex\hbox{%
1516     \fontencoding{OMS}\fontfamily{cmsy}\selectfont\char\tw@%
1517   }#1)%
1518 }

```

16.7 Scripture Quotations

The macros in this section typeset scripture quotations and other between-songs environments.

songgroup A **songgroup** environment associates all enclosed environments with the enclosed song. When generating a partial list, all the enclosed environments are contributed if and only if the enclosed song is contributed.

```

1519 \newenvironment{songgroup}{%
1520   \ifnum\SB@grouplvl=\z@%
1521     \edef\SB@sgroup{\thesongnum}%
1522     \global\SB@groupcnt\m@ne%
1523   \fi%
1524   \advance\SB@grouplvl\@ne%
1525 }{%
1526   \advance\SB@grouplvl\m@ne%
1527   \ifnum\SB@grouplvl=\z@\let\SB@sgroup\@empty\fi%
1528 }
```

\SB@grouplvl Count the **songgroup** environment nesting depth.

```

1529 \newcount\SB@grouplvl
```

intersong An **intersong** block contributes vertical material to a column between the songs of a songs section. It is subject to the same column-breaking algorithm as real songs, but receives none of the other formatting applied to songs.

```

1530 \newenvironment{intersong}{%
1531   \ifSB@insong\SB@errbro\SB@closeall\fi%
1532   \ifSB@intersong\SB@errbr\SB@closeall\fi%
1533   \setbox\SB@chorusbox\box\voidb@x%
1534   \SB@intersongtrue%
1535   \def\SB@closeall{\end{intersong}}%
1536   \setbox\SB@songbox\vbox\bgroup\begin{group}%
1537     \ifnum\SB@numcols>\z@\hsize\SB@colwidth\fi%
1538     \ifdim\sbarheight>\z@%
1539       \hrule\@height\sbarheight\@width\hsize%
1540       \nobreak%
1541     \fi%
1542 }{%
1543   \ifSB@intersong
1544     \ifdim\sbarheight>\z@%
1545       \ifhmode\par\fi%
1546       \SB@skip\lastskip%
1547       \unskip\nobreak\vskip\SB@skip%
1548       \hbox{\vrule\@height\sbarheight\@width\hsize}%
1549     \fi%
1550   \endgroup\egroup%
1551   \ifSB@omitscrip%
1552     \setbox\SB@songbox\box\voidb@x%
1553   \else%
1554     \SB@submitsong%
1555   \fi%
1556   \SB@intersongfalse%
1557 \else%
1558   \ifSB@insong\SB@errero\SB@closeall\else\SB@errert\fi%
```

```

1559 \fi%
1560 }

```

The starred form contributes page-spanning vertical material directly to the top of the nearest fresh page.

```

1561 \newenvironment{intersong*}{%
1562 \ifSB@insong\SB@errbro\SB@closeall\fi%
1563 \ifSB@intersong\SB@errbrr\SB@closeall\fi%
1564 \setbox\SB@chorusbox\box\voidb@x%
1565 \SB@intersongtrue%
1566 \def\SB@closeall{\end{intersong*}}%
1567 \setbox\SB@songbox\vbox\bgroup\begingroup%
1568 }{%
1569 \ifSB@intersong%
1570 \endgroup\egroup%
1571 \ifSB@omitscrip%
1572 \setbox\SB@songbox\box\voidb@x%
1573 \else%
1574 \def\SB@stype{\SB@styppage}%
1575 \SB@submitsong%
1576 \def\SB@stype{\SB@stypcol}%
1577 \fi%
1578 \SB@intersongfalse%
1579 \else%
1580 \ifSB@insong\SB@errero\SB@closeall\else\SB@errert\fi%
1581 \fi%
1582 }

```

scripture Begin a scripture quotation. We first store the reference in a box for later use, and
\beginscripture then set up a suitable environment for the quotation. Quotations cannot typically be reworded if line-breaking fails, so we set **\emergencystretch** to a relatively high value at the outset.

```

1583 \newenvironment{scripture}{\beginscripture}{\SB@endscripture}
1584 \newcommand\beginscripture[1]{%
1585 \begin{intersong}%
1586 \SB@parsesrefs{#1}%
1587 \setbox\SB@envbox\hbox{\printsrcite\songrefs}}%
1588 \def\SB@closeall{\endscripture}%
1589 \nobreak\vskip5\p@%
1590 \SB@parindent\parindent\parindent\z@%
1591 \parskip\z@skip\parfillskip\@flushglue%
1592 \leftskip\SB@parindent\rightskip\SB@parindent\relax%
1593 \scripturefont%
1594 \baselineskip\fontsize\p@\@plus\p@\relax%
1595 \advance\baselineskip\p@\relax%
1596 \emergencystretch.3em%
1597 }

```

\SB@endscripture End a scripture quotation.

```

1598 \newcommand\SB@endscripture{%
1599   \ifSB@intersong
1600     \scitehere%
1601     \ifhmode\par\fi%
1602     \vskip-3\p@%
1603   \end{intersong}%
1604   \fi%
1605 }

```

\scitehere Usually the scripture citation should just come at the `\endscripture` line, but at times the user might want to invoke this macro explicitly at a more suitable point. A good example is when something near the end of the scripture quotation drops T_EX into vertical mode. In such cases, it is often better to issue the citation before leaving horizontal mode.

In any case, this macro should work decently whether in horizontal or vertical mode. In horizontal mode life is easy: we just append the reference to the current horizontal list using the classic code from p. 106 of The T_EXbook. However, if we're now in vertical mode, the problem is a little harder. We do the best we can by using `\lastbox` to remove the last line, then adding the reference and re-typesetting it. This isn't as good as the horizontal mode solution because T_EX only gets to reevaluate the last line instead of the whole paragraph, but usually the results are passable.

```

1606 \newcommand\scitehere{%
1607   \ifSB@intersong%
1608     \ifvoid\SB@envbox\else%
1609       \ifvmode%
1610         \setbox\SB@box\lastbox%
1611         \nointerlineskip\noindent\hskip-\leftskip%
1612         \unhbox\SB@box\unskip%
1613         \fi%
1614         \unskip\nobreak\hfil\penalty50\hskip.8em\null\nobreak\hfil%
1615         \box\SB@envbox\kern-\SB@parindent%
1616         {\parfillskip\z@\finalhyphendemerits2000\par}%
1617       \fi%
1618     \else%
1619       \SB@errscrip\scitehere%
1620     \fi%
1621 }

```

\Acolon Typeset a line of poetry in a scripture quotation.

```

\Bcolon 1622 \newcommand\Acolon{\SB@colon2\Acolon}
1623 \newcommand\Bcolon{\SB@colon1\Bcolon}

```

\SB@colon Begin a group of temporary definitions that will end at the next `<return>`. The `<return>` will end the paragraph and close the local scope.

```

1624 \newcommand\SB@colon[2]{%
1625   \ifSB@intersong\else%
1626     \SB@errscrip#2%

```

```

1627 \beginscripture{Unknown}%
1628 \fi%
1629 \ifhmode\par\fi%
1630 \beginingroup%
1631 \rightskip\SB@parindent\@plus4em%
1632 \advance\leftskip2\SB@parindent%
1633 \advance\parindent-#1\SB@parindent%
1634 \def\par{\endgraf\endgroup}%
1635 \obeylines%
1636 }

```

\strophe Insert blank space indicative of a strophe division in a scripture quotation.

```

1637 \newcommand\strophe{%
1638 \ifSB@intersong\else%
1639 \SB@errscrip\strophe\beginscripture{Unknown}%
1640 \fi%
1641 \vskip.9ex\@plus.45ex\@minus.68ex\relax%
1642 }

```

\scripindent Create an indented sub-block within a scripture quotation.

```

\scripoutdent 1643 \newcommand\SB@scripindent[2]{%
\SB@scripindent 1644 \ifSB@intersong\else%
1645 \SB@errscrip#2\beginscripture{Unknown}%
1646 \fi%
1647 \ifhmode\par\fi%
1648 \advance\leftskip#1\SB@parindent\relax%
1649 }
1650 \newcommand\scripindent{\SB@scripindent1\scripindent}
1651 \newcommand\scripoutdent{\SB@scripindent-\scripoutdent}

```

\shiftdblquotes The Zaph Chancery font used by default to typeset scripture quotations seems to have some kerning problems with double-quote ligatures. The **\shiftdblquotes** macro allows one to modify the spacing around all double-quotes until the current group ends.

```

\SB@rdqright 1652 \newcommand\SB@quotesactive{%
\SB@scanlq 1653 \catcode'\active%
\SB@scanrq 1654 \catcode'\active%
\SB@dolq 1655 }
\SB@dorq 1656 \newcommand\shiftdblquotes[4]{%
1657 \newcommand\SB@ldqleft{}
1658 \newcommand\SB@ldqright{}
1659 \newcommand\SB@rdqleft{}
1660 \newcommand\SB@rdqright{}
1661 \newcommand\SB@scanlq{}
1662 \newcommand\SB@scanrq{}
1663 \newcommand\SB@dolq{}
1664 \newcommand\SB@dorq{}
1665 {
1666 \SB@quotesactive

```

```

1667 \gdef\shiftdblquotes#1#2#3#4{%
1668   \def\SB@ldqleft{\kern#1}%
1669   \def\SB@ldqright{\kern#2}%
1670   \def\SB@rdqleft{\kern#3}%
1671   \def\SB@rdqright{\kern#4}%
1672   \SB@quotesactive%
1673   \def'\{\futurelet\SB@next\SB@scanlq}%
1674   \def'\{\futurelet\SB@next\SB@scanrq}%
1675 }
1676 \gdef\SB@scanlq{%
1677   \ifx\SB@next'%
1678     \expandafter\SB@dolq%
1679   \else%
1680     \expandafter\lq%
1681   \fi%
1682 }
1683 \gdef\SB@scanrq{%
1684   \ifx\SB@next'%
1685     \expandafter\SB@dorq%
1686   \else%
1687     \expandafter\rq%
1688   \fi%
1689 }
1690 \gdef\SB@dolq'{%
1691   \ifvmode\leavevmode\else\\fi%
1692   \vadjust{}%
1693   \SB@ldqleft\lq\lq\SB@ldqright%
1694   \vadjust{}%
1695 }
1696 \gdef\SB@dorq'{%
1697   \ifvmode\leavevmode\else\\fi%
1698   \vadjust{}%
1699   \SB@rdqleft\rq\rq\SB@rdqright%
1700   \vadjust{}%
1701 }
1702 }

```

16.8 Transposition

The macros that transpose chords are contained in this section.

\SB@transposefactor This counter identifies the requested number of halfsteps by which chords are to be transposed (from -11 to $+11$).

```
1703 \newcount\SB@transposefactor
```

\ifSB@convertnotes Even when transposition is not requested, the transposition logic can be used to automatically convert note names to another form. The following conditional turns that feature on or off.

```
1704 \newif\ifSB@convertnotes
```

`\notenameA` Reserve a control sequence for each note of the diatonic scale. These will be used

`\notenameB` to identify which token sequences the input file uses to denote the seven scale

`\notenameC` degrees. Their eventual definitions *must* consist entirely of uppercase letters, and

`\notenameD` they must be assigned using `\def`, but that comes later.

```

\notenameE 1705 \newcommand\notenameA{}
\notenameF 1706 \newcommand\notenameB{}
\notenameG 1707 \newcommand\notenameC{}
              1708 \newcommand\notenameD{}
              1709 \newcommand\notenameE{}
              1710 \newcommand\notenameF{}
              1711 \newcommand\notenameG{}

```

`\printnoteA` These control sequences are what the transposition logic actually outputs to denote

`\printnoteB` each scale degree. They can include any L^AT_EX code that is legal in horizontal

`\printnoteC` mode.

```

\printnoteD 1712 \newcommand\printnoteA{}
\printnoteE 1713 \newcommand\printnoteB{}
\printnoteF 1714 \newcommand\printnoteC{}
\printnoteG 1715 \newcommand\printnoteD{}
              1716 \newcommand\printnoteE{}
              1717 \newcommand\printnoteF{}
              1718 \newcommand\printnoteG{}

```

`\notenamesin` Set the note names used by the input file.

```

1719 \newcommand\notenamesin[7]{%
1720   \def\notenameA{#1}%
1721   \def\notenameB{#2}%
1722   \def\notenameC{#3}%
1723   \def\notenameD{#4}%
1724   \def\notenameE{#5}%
1725   \def\notenameF{#6}%
1726   \def\notenameG{#7}%
1727   \SB@convertnotesttrue%
1728 }

```

`\notenamesout` Set the note names that are output by the transposition logic.

```

1729 \newcommand\notenamesout[7]{%
1730   \def\printnoteA{#1}%
1731   \def\printnoteB{#2}%
1732   \def\printnoteC{#3}%
1733   \def\printnoteD{#4}%
1734   \def\printnoteE{#5}%
1735   \def\printnoteF{#6}%
1736   \def\printnoteG{#7}%
1737   \SB@convertnotesttrue%
1738 }

```

`\notenames` Set an identical input name and output name for each scale degree.

```

1739 \newcommand\notenames[7]{%
1740   \notenamesin{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}{#6}{#7}%
1741   \notenamesout{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}{#6}{#7}%
1742   \SB@convertnotesfalse%
1743 }
```

`\alphascale` Predefine scales for alphabetic names and solfedge names, and set alphabetic scales
`\solfedge` to be the default.

```

1744 \newcommand\alphascale{\notenames ABCDEFG}
1745 \newcommand\solfedge{\notenames{LA}{SI}{DO}{RE}{MI}{FA}{SOL}}
1746 \alphascale
```

`\ifSB@prefshrps` When a transposed chord falls on a black key, the code must choose which enharmonically equivalent name to give the new chord. (For example, should C transposed by +1 be named C# or Db?) A heuristic is used to guess which name is most appropriate. The following conditional records whether the current key signature is sharped or flatted according to this heuristic guess.

```

1747 \newif\ifSB@prefshrps
```

`\ifSB@needkey` The first chord seen is usually the best indicator of the key of the song. (Even when the first chord isn't the tonic, it will often be the dominant or subdominant, which usually has the same kind of accidental in its key signatures as the actual key.) This conditional remembers whether the current chord is the first one seen in the song, and should therefore be used to guess the key of the song.

```

1748 \newif\ifSB@needkey
```

`\transpose` The `\transpose` macro sets the transposition adjustment factor and informs the transposition logic that the next chord seen will be the first one in the new key.

```

1749 \newcommand\transpose[1]{%
1750   \advance\SB@transposefactor by#1\relax%
1751   \SB@cnt\SB@transposefactor%
1752   \divide\SB@cnt12 %
1753   \multiply\SB@cnt12 %
1754   \advance\SB@transposefactor-\SB@cnt%
1755   \SB@needkeytrue%
1756 }
```

`\capo` Specifying a `\capo` normally just causes a textual note to musicians to be typeset, but if the `transposecapos` option is active, it activates transposition of the chords.

```

1757 \newcommand\capo[1]{%
1758   \iftranscapos\transpose{#1}\else\musicnote{capo #1}\fi%
1759 }
```

`\prefersharp` One of these macros is called after the first chord has been seen to register that
`\preferflat` we're transposing to a key with a sharped or flatted key signature.

```

1760 \newcommand\prefersharp{\SB@prefshrpstrue\SB@needkeyfalse}
1761 \newcommand\preferflat{\SB@prefshrpfalse\SB@needkeyfalse}
```


\transposehere If automatic transposition has been requested, yield the given chord transposed by the requested amount. Otherwise return the given chord verbatim.

```

1762 \newcommand\transposehere[1]{%
1763   \ifnum\SB@transposefactor=\z@%
1764     \ifSB@convertnotes%
1765       \SB@dottranspose{#1}%
1766       \the\SB@toks%
1767     \else%
1768       #1%
1769     \fi%
1770   \else%
1771     \ifSB@convertnotes%
1772       {\SB@transposefactor\z@%
1773        \SB@dottranspose{#1}%
1774        \xdef\SB@tempv{\the\SB@toks}}%
1775     \else%
1776       \def\SB@tempv{#1}%
1777     \fi%
1778     \SB@dottranspose{#1}%
1779     \expandafter\trchordformat\expandafter{\SB@tempv}{\the\SB@toks}%
1780   \fi%
1781 }
```

\notrans Suppress chord transposition without suppressing note name conversion. When a **\notrans{<text>}** macro appears within text undergoing transposition, the **\notrans** macro and the group will be preserved verbatim by the transposition parser. When it is then expanded after parsing, we must therefore re-invoke the transposition logic on the argument, but in an environment where the transposition factor has been temporarily set to zero. This causes note name conversion to occur without actually transposing.

```

1782 \newcommand\notrans[1]{%
1783   \begingroup%
1784     \SB@transposefactor\z@%
1785     \transposehere{#1}%
1786   \endgroup%
1787 }
```

\SB@dottranspose Parse the argument to a chord macro, yielding the transposed equivalent in the **\SB@toks** token register.

```

1788 \newcommand\SB@dottranspose[1]{%
1789   \SB@toks{}%
1790   \let\SB@dothis\SB@trmain%
1791   \SB@trscan#1\SB@trend%
1792 }
```

\trchordformat By default, transposing means replacing old chords with new chords in the new key. However, sometimes the user may want to typeset something more sophisticated, like old chords followed by new chords in parentheses so that musicians who use

capos and those who don't can play from the same piece of music. Such typesetting is possible by redefining the following macro to something like #1 (#2) instead of #2.

```
1793 \newcommand\trchordformat[2]{#2}
```

\SB@trscan This is the entrypoint to the code that scans over the list of tokens comprising a chord and transposes note names as it goes. Start by peeking ahead at the next symbol without consuming it.

```
1794 \newcommand\SB@trscan{\futurelet\SB@next\SB@dothis}
```

\SB@trmain Test to see whether the token was a begin-brace, end-brace, or space. These tokens require special treatment because they cannot be accepted as implicit arguments to macros.

```
1795 \newcommand\SB@trmain{%
1796   \ifx\SB@next\bgroup%
1797     \let\SB@donext\SB@trgroup%
1798   \else\ifx\SB@next\egroup%
1799     \SB@toks\expandafter{\the\SB@toks\egroup}%
1800     \let\SB@donext\SB@trskip%
1801   \else\ifcat\noexpand\SB@next\@sptoken%
1802     \SB@appendsp\SB@toks%
1803     \let\SB@donext\SB@trskip%
1804   \else%
1805     \let\SB@donext\SB@trstep%
1806   \fi\fi\fi%
1807   \SB@donext%
1808 }
```

\SB@trgroup A begin-group brace lies next in the input stream. Consume the entire group as an argument to this macro, and append it, including the begin- and end-group tokens, to the list of tokens processed so far. No transposition takes place within a group; they are copied verbatim because they probably contain macro code.

```
1809 \newcommand\SB@trgroup[1]{%
1810   \SB@toks\expandafter{\the\SB@toks{#1}}%
1811   \SB@trscan%
1812 }
```

\SB@trspace A space or end-brace lies next in the input stream. It has already been added to the token list, so skip over it.

```
1813 \newcommand\SB@trskip{%
1814   \afterassignment\SB@trscan%
1815   \let\SB@next= }
```

\SB@trstep A non-grouping token lies next in the input stream. Consume it as an argument to this macro, and then test it to see whether it's a note letter or some other recognized item. If so, process it; otherwise just append it to the token list and continue scanning.

```
1816 \newcommand\SB@trstep[1]{%
```

```

1817 \let\SB@donext\SB@trscan%
1818 \ifcat\noexpand\SB@next A%
1819 \ifnum\uccode'#1='#1%
1820 \def\SB@temp{#1}%
1821 \let\SB@dothis\SB@trnote%
1822 \else%
1823 \SB@toks\expandafter{\the\SB@toks#1}%
1824 \fi%
1825 \else\ifx\SB@next\SB@trend
1826 \let\SB@donext\relax%
1827 \else%
1828 \SB@toks\expandafter{\the\SB@toks#1}%
1829 \fi\fi%
1830 \SB@donext%
1831 }

```

\SB@trnote We're in the midst of processing a sequence of uppercase letters that might comprise a note name. Check to see whether the next token is an accidental (sharp or flat), or yet another letter.

```

1832 \newcommand\SB@trnote{%
1833 \ifcat\noexpand\SB@next A%
1834 \let\SB@donext\SB@trnotestep%
1835 \else\ifnum\SB@transposefactor=\z@%
1836 \SB@cnt\z@%
1837 \let\SB@donext\SB@trtrans%
1838 \else\ifx\SB@next\flt%
1839 \SB@cnt\m@ne%
1840 \let\SB@donext\SB@tracc%
1841 \else\ifx\SB@next\shrp%
1842 \SB@cnt\@ne%
1843 \let\SB@donext\SB@tracc%
1844 \else%
1845 \SB@cnt\z@%
1846 \let\SB@donext\SB@trtrans%
1847 \fi\fi\fi\fi%
1848 \SB@donext%
1849 }

```

\SB@trnotestep The next token is a letter. Consume it and test to see whether it is an uppercase letter. If so, add it to the note name being assembled; otherwise reinsert it into the input stream and jump directly to the transposition logic.

```

1850 \newcommand\SB@trnotestep[1]{%
1851 \ifnum\uccode'#1='#1%
1852 \expandafter\def\expandafter\SB@temp\expandafter{\SB@temp#1}%
1853 \expandafter\SB@trscan%
1854 \else%
1855 \SB@cnt\z@%
1856 \expandafter\SB@trtrans\expandafter#1%
1857 \fi%
1858 }

```

`\SB@tracc` We've encountered an accidental (sharp or flat) immediately following a note name. Peek ahead at the next token without consuming it, and then jump to the transposition logic. This is done because the transposition logic might need to infer the key signature of the song, and if the next token is an `m` (for minor), then that information can help.

```

1859 \newcommand\SB@tracc[1]{\futurelet\SB@next\SB@trtrans}

```

`\SB@trtrans` We've assembled a sequence of capital letters (in `\SB@temp`) that might comprise a note name to be transposed. If the letters were followed by a `\shrp` then `\SB@cnt` is 1; if they were followed by a `\flt` then it is -1 ; otherwise it is 0. If the assembled letters turn out to not match any valid note name, then do nothing and return to scanning. Otherwise compute a new transposed name.

```

1860 \newcommand\SB@trtrans{%
1861   \advance\SB@cnt%
1862   \ifx\SB@temp\notenameA\z@%
1863   \else\ifx\SB@temp\notenameB\tw@%
1864   \else\ifx\SB@temp\notenameC\thr@@%
1865   \else\ifx\SB@temp\notenameD5 %
1866   \else\ifx\SB@temp\notenameE7 %
1867   \else\ifx\SB@temp\notenameF8 %
1868   \else\ifx\SB@temp\notenameG10 %
1869   \else-99 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
1870   \ifnum\SB@cnt<\m@ne%
1871     \SB@toks\expandafter\expandafter\expandafter{%
1872       \expandafter\the\expandafter\SB@toks\SB@temp}%
1873   \else%
1874     \advance\SB@cnt\SB@transposefactor%
1875     \ifnum\SB@cnt<\z@\advance\SB@cnt12 \fi%
1876     \ifnum\SB@cnt>11 \advance\SB@cnt-12 \fi%
1877     \ifSB@needkey\ifnum\SB@transposefactor=\z@\else\SB@setkeysig\fi\fi%
1878     \edef\SB@temp{%
1879       \the\SB@toks%
1880       \ifSB@prefshrps%
1881         \ifcase\SB@cnt\printnoteA\or\printnoteA\noexpand\shrp\or%
1882         \printnoteB\or\printnoteC\or\printnoteC\noexpand\shrp\or%
1883         \printnoteD\or\printnoteD\noexpand\shrp\or\printnoteE\or%
1884         \printnoteF\or\printnoteF\noexpand\shrp\or\printnoteG\or%
1885         \printnoteG\noexpand\shrp\fi%
1886       \else%
1887         \ifcase\SB@cnt\printnoteA\or\printnoteB\noexpand\flt\or%
1888         \printnoteB\or\printnoteC\or\printnoteD\noexpand\flt\or%
1889         \printnoteD\or\printnoteE\noexpand\flt\or\printnoteE\or%
1890         \printnoteF\or\printnoteG\noexpand\flt\or\printnoteG\or%
1891         \printnoteA\noexpand\flt\fi%
1892       \fi}%
1893     \SB@toks\expandafter{\SB@temp}%
1894   \fi%
1895   \let\SB@dothis\SB@trmain%
1896   \SB@trscan%

```

1897 }

\SB@setkeysig If this is the first chord of the song, assume that this is the tonic of the key, and select whether to use a sharped or flatted key signature for the rest of the song based on that. Even if this isn't the tonic, it's probably the dominant or sub-dominant, which almost always has a number of sharps or flats similar to the tonic. If the bottom note of the chord turns out to be a black key, we choose the enharmonic equivalent that is closest to C on the circle of fifths (i.e., the one that has fewest sharps or flats).

```

1898 \newcommand\SB@setkeysig{%
1899   \global\SB@needkeyfalse%
1900   \ifcase\SB@cnt%
1901     \global\SB@prefshrpstrue\or% A
1902     \global\SB@prefshrpfalse\or% Bb
1903     \global\SB@prefshrpstrue\or% B
1904     \ifx\SB@next m% C
1905       \global\SB@prefshrpfalse%
1906     \else%
1907       \global\SB@prefshrpstrue%
1908     \fi\or%
1909     \global\SB@prefshrpstrue\or% C#
1910     \ifx\SB@next m% D
1911       \global\SB@prefshrpfalse%
1912     \else%
1913       \global\SB@prefshrpstrue%
1914     \fi\or%
1915     \global\SB@prefshrpfalse\or% Eb
1916     \global\SB@prefshrpstrue\or% E
1917     \global\SB@prefshrpfalse\or% F
1918     \global\SB@prefshrpstrue\or% F#
1919     \ifx\SB@next m% G
1920       \global\SB@prefshrpfalse%
1921     \else%
1922       \global\SB@prefshrpstrue%
1923     \fi\or%
1924     \global\SB@prefshrpfalse\else% Ab
1925     \global\SB@needkeytrue% non-chord
1926   \fi%
1927 }
```

\SB@trend The following macro marks the end of chord text to be processed. It should always be consumed and discarded by the chord-scanning logic above, so generate an error if it is ever expanded.

```

1928 \newcommand\SB@trend{%
1929   \SB@Error{Internal Error: Transposition failed}%
1930   {This error should not occur.}%
1931 }
```

16.9 Measure Bars

The following code handles the typesetting of measure bars.

```

\SB@metertop These macros remember the current numerator and denominator of the meter.
\SB@meterbot 1932 \newcommand\SB@metertop{}
               1933 \newcommand\SB@meterbot{}

\meter Set the current meter without producing an actual measure bar yet.
1934 \newcommand\meter[2]{\gdef\SB@metertop{#1}\gdef\SB@meterbot{#2}}

\SB@measuremark Normally measure bar boxes should be as thin as possible so that they can be
                 slipped into lyrics without making them hard to read. But when two measure
                 bars appear consecutively, they need to be spaced apart more so that they look
                 like two separate lines instead of one thick line. To achieve this, there needs to be
                 a way to pull a vbox off the current list and determine whether or not it is a box
                 that contains a measure bar. The solution is to insert a mark (\SB@measuremark)
                 at the top of each measure bar vbox. We can then see whether this measure bar
                 immediately follows another measure bar by using \vsplit on \lastbox.
1935 \newcommand\SB@measuremark{\SB@IsMeasure}

\SB@makembar Typeset a measure bar. If provided,  $\langle arg1 \rangle$  is the numerator and  $\langle arg2 \rangle$  is the
              denominator of the meter to be rendered above the bar. If those arguments are
              left blank, render a measure bar without a meter marking.
1936 \newcommand\SB@makembar[2]{%
1937   \ifSB@inverse\else%
1938     \ifSB@inchorus\else\SB@errmbar\fi%
1939   \fi%
1940   \ifhmode%
1941     \SB@skip\lastskip\unskip%
1942     \setbox\SB@box\lastbox%
1943     \copy\SB@box%
1944     \ifvbox\SB@box%
1945       \begingroup%
1946         \setbox\SB@boxii\copy\SB@box%
1947         \vbadness\@M\v fuzz\maxdimen%
1948         \setbox\SB@boxii%
1949         \vsplit\SB@boxii to\maxdimen%
1950       \endgroup%
1951       \long\edef\SB@temp{\splitfirstmark}%
1952       \ifx\SB@temp\SB@measuremark%
1953         \penalty100\hskip1em%
1954       \else%
1955         \penalty100\hskip\SB@skip%
1956       \fi%
1957     \else%
1958       \penalty100\hskip\SB@skip%
1959     \fi%
1960   \fi%

```

```

1961 \ifvmode\leavevmode\fi%
1962 \setbox\SB@box\hbox{\tiny\sffamily{#1}}%
1963 \setbox\SB@boxii\hbox{\tiny\sffamily{#2}}%
1964 \ifdim\wd\SB@box>\wd\SB@boxii%
1965   \SB@dimen\wd\SB@box\relax%
1966 \else%
1967   \SB@dimen\wd\SB@boxii\relax%
1968 \fi%
1969 \ifdim\SB@dimen<.5\p@%
1970   \SB@dimen.5\p@%
1971 \fi%
1972 \SB@dimenii\baselineskip%
1973 \advance\SB@dimenii-2\p@%
1974 \advance\SB@dimenii-\ht\SB@box%
1975 \advance\SB@dimenii-\dp\SB@box%
1976 \advance\SB@dimenii-\ht\SB@boxii%
1977 \advance\SB@dimenii-\dp\SB@boxii%
1978 \vbox{%
1979   \mark{\SB@measuremark}%
1980   \hbox to\SB@dimen{%
1981     \hfil%
1982     \box\SB@box%
1983     \hfil%
1984   }%
1985   \nointerlineskip%
1986   \hbox to\SB@dimen{%
1987     \hfil%
1988     \box\SB@boxii%
1989     \hfil%
1990   }%
1991   \nointerlineskip%
1992   \hbox to\SB@dimen{%
1993     \hfil%
1994     \vrule\@width.5\p@\@height\SB@dimenii%
1995     \hfil%
1996   }%
1997 }%
1998 \meter{}{}%
1999 }

```

\mbar The **\mbar** macro invokes **\SB@mbar**, which gets redefined by macros and options that turn measure bars on and off.

```
2000 \newcommand\mbar{\SB@mbar}
```

\measurebar Make a measure bar using the most recently defined meter. Then set the meter to nothing so that the next measure bar will not display any meter unless the meter changes.

```

2001 \newcommand\measurebar{%
2002   \mbar\SB@metertop\SB@meterbot%
2003 }

```

`\SB@repcolon` Create the colon that preceeds or follows a repeat sign.

```

2004 \newcommand\SB@repcolon{%
2005   \usefont{OT1}{cmss}{m}{n}\selectfont%
2006   \ifchorded%
2007     \baselineskip.5\SB@dimen%
2008     \vbox{\hbox{:}\hbox{:}\kern.5\p@}%
2009   \else%
2010     \raise.5\p@\hbox{:}%
2011   \fi%
2012 }}
```

`\lrep` Create a begin-repeat sign.

```

2013 \newcommand\lrep{%
2014   \SB@dimen\baselineskip%
2015   \advance\SB@dimen-2\p@%
2016   \vrule\@width1.5\p@\@height\SB@dimen\@depth\p@%
2017   \kern1.5\p@%
2018   \vrule\@width.5\p@\@height\SB@dimen\@depth\p@%
2019   \SB@repcolon%
2020 }
```

`\rrep` Create an end-repeat sign.

```

2021 \newcommand\rrep{%
2022   \SB@dimen\baselineskip%
2023   \advance\SB@dimen-2\p@%
2024   \SB@repcolon%
2025   \vrule\@width.5\p@\@height\SB@dimen\@depth\p@%
2026   \kern1.5\p@%
2027   \vrule\@width1.5\p@\@height\SB@dimen\@depth\p@%
2028 }
```

16.10 Lyric Scanning

The obvious way to create a chord macro is as a normal macro with two arguments, one for the chord name and one for the lyrics to go under the chord—e.g. `\chord{<chordname>}{<lyric>}`. However, in practice such a macro is extremely cumbersome and difficult to use. The problem is that in order to use such a macro properly, the user must remember a bunch of complex style rules that govern what part of the lyric text needs to go in the `<lyric>` parameter and what part should be typed after the closing brace. To avoid separating a word from its trailing punctuation, the `<lyric>` parameter must often include punctuation but not certain special punctuation like hyphens, should include the rest of the word but not if there's another chord in the word, should omit measure bars but only if measure bars are being shown, etc. This is way too difficult for the average user.

To avoid this problem, we define chords using a one-argument macro (the argument is the chord name), but with no explicit argument for the lyric part. Instead, the macro scans ahead in the input stream, automatically determining

what portion of the lyric text that follows should be sucked in as an implicit second argument. The following code does this look-ahead scanning.

`\ifSB@wordends` Chord macros must look ahead in the input stream to see whether this chord is immediately followed by whitespace or the remainder of a word. If the latter, hyphenation might need to be introduced. These macros keep track of the need for hyphenation, if any.

```
2029 \newif\ifSB@wordends
2030 \newif\ifSB@brokenword
```

`\SB@lyric` Lyrics appearing after a chord are scanned into the following token list register.

```
2031 \newtoks\SB@lyric
```

`\SB@numhyps` Hyphens appearing in lyrics require special treatment. The following counter counts the number of explicit hyphens ending the lyric syllable that follows the current chord.

```
2032 \newcount\SB@numhyps
```

`\SB@lyricnohyp` When a lyric syllable under a chord ends in exactly one hyphen, the following token register is set to be the syllable without the hyphen.

```
2033 \newtoks\SB@lyricnohyp
```

`\SB@lyricbox` The following two boxes hold the part of the lyric text that is to be typeset under the chord, and the chord text that is to be typeset above.

```
2034 \newbox\SB@lyricbox
2035 \newbox\SB@chordbox
```

`\SB@chbstok` When `\MultiwordChords` is active, the following reserved control sequence remembers the first (space) token not yet included into the `\SB@lyricbox` box.

```
2036 \newcommand\SB@chbstok{}
```

`\SB@setchord` The following macro typesets its argument as a chord and stores the result in box `\SB@chordbox` for later placement into the document. The hat token (^) is redefined so that outside of math mode it suppresses chord memorization, but inside of math mode it retains its usual superscript meaning. If memorization is active, the chord's token sequence is stored in the current replay register. If `\SB@chordbox` is non-empty, the new chord is appended to it rather than replacing it. This allows consecutive chords not separated by whitespace to be typeset as a single chord sequence atop a common lyric.

```
2037 \newcommand\SB@setchord{}
2038 {
2039   \catcode'\active
2040   \catcode'\!7
2041   \gdef\SB@setchord#1{%
2042     \SB@gettabindtrue\SB@nohattrue%
2043     \setbox\SB@chordbox\hbox{%
2044       \unhbox\SB@chordbox%
```

```

2045     \begingroup%
2046     \ifSB@trackch%
2047         \def\SB@activehat{\ifmmode!\else\global\SB@nohatfalse\fi}%
2048     \else%
2049         \def\SB@activehat{%
2050             \ifmmode!\else\SB@lop\SB@ctail\SB@toks\the\SB@toks\fi%
2051         }%
2052     \fi%
2053     \let~\SB@activehat%
2054     \printchord{%
2055         \ifSB@firstchord\else\kern.15em\fi%
2056         \vphantom/%
2057         \transposehere{#1}%
2058         \kern.2em%
2059     }%
2060 \endgroup%
2061 }%
2062 \SB@gettabindfalse%
2063 \ifSB@trackch\ifSB@nohat%
2064     \global\SB@creg\expandafter{\the\SB@creg#1\\}%
2065 \fi\fi%
2066 \let\SB@noreplay\@firstofone%
2067 }
2068 }

```

`\SB@outertest` The lyric-scanning code must preemptively determine whether the next token is
`\SB@otesta` a macro declared `\outer` before it tries to accept that token as an argument.
`\SB@otestb` Otherwise TeX will abort with a parsing error. Macros declared `\outer` are not
allowed in arguments, so determining whether a token is `\outer` is a delicate
process. The following does so by consulting `\meaning`. A macro can be identified
as `\outer` if its meaning has the word “`\outer`” before the first colon.

```

2069 \newcommand\SB@outertest{%
2070     \expandafter\SB@otesta\meaning\SB@next:\SB@otesta%
2071 }
2072 \newcommand\SB@otesta{}
2073 \edef\SB@otesta#1:#2\SB@otesta{%
2074     \noexpand\SB@otestb%
2075     #1\string\outer%
2076     \noexpand\SB@otestb%
2077 }
2078 \newcommand\SB@otestb{}
2079 \expandafter\def\expandafter\SB@otestb%
2080 \expandafter#\expandafter1\string\outer#2\SB@otestb{%
2081     \def\SB@temp{#2}%
2082     \ifx\SB@temp\@empty\SB@testfalse\else\SB@testtrue\fi%
2083 }

```

`\SB@UTFtest` To support UTF-8 encoded L^AT_EX source files, we need to be able to identify
`\SB@U@two` multibyte characters during the lyric scanning process. Alas, the `utf8.def` file
`\SB@U@three`
`\SB@U@four`
`\SB@@UTFtest`

provides no clean way of identifying the macros it defines for this purpose. The best solution seems to be to look for any token named `\UTFviii@...@octets` in the top-level expansion of the macro.

```

2084 \newcommand\SB@UTFtest{}
2085 \edef\SB@UTFtest#1{%
2086   \noexpand\expandafter%
2087   \noexpand\SB@@UTFtest%
2088   \noexpand\meaning#1%
2089   \string\UTFviii@zero@octets%
2090   \noexpand\SB@@UTFtest%
2091 }
2092 \newcommand\SB@U@two{\global\SB@cnt\tw@}
2093 \newcommand\SB@U@three{\global\SB@cnt\thr@@}
2094 \newcommand\SB@U@four{\global\SB@cnt4\relax}
2095 \newcommand\SB@@UTFtest{}
2096 {\escapechar\m@ne
2097  \xdef\SB@temp{\string\@octets}}
2098 \edef\SB@temp{##1\string\UTFviii@##2\SB@temp}
2099 \expandafter\def\expandafter\SB@@UTFtest\SB@temp#3\SB@@UTFtest{%
2100   \SB@cnt\z@%
2101   {\csname SB@U@#2\endcsname}%
2102 }

```

`\DeclareLyricChar` When scanning the lyric text that follows a chord, it is necessary to distinguish accents and other intra-word macros (which should be included in the under-chord lyric text) from other macros (which should be pushed out away from the text).

`\DeclareNonLyric`

`\DeclareNoHyphen`

`\SB@declare` The following macros allow users to declare a token to be lyric-continuing or lyric-ending.

```

2103 \newcommand\SB@declare[3]{%
2104   \afterassignment\iffalse\let\SB@next= #3\relax\fi%
2105   \SB@UTFtest\SB@next%
2106   \ifcase\SB@cnt%
2107     \ifcat\noexpand#3\relax%
2108       \SB@addNtest\SB@macrotests#1#2#3%
2109     \else\ifcat\noexpand#3.%
2110       \SB@addDtest\SB@othertests#1#2%
2111     \else\ifcat\noexpand#3A%
2112       \SB@addDtest\SB@lettertests#1#2%
2113     \else%
2114       \SB@addDtest\relax0#2%
2115     \fi\fi\fi%
2116   \or%
2117     \SB@addNtest\SB@macrotests#1#2#3%
2118   \else%
2119     \SB@addMtest\SB@multitests#1#2#3\relax\relax\relax%
2120   \fi%
2121 }
2122 \newcommand\DeclareLyricChar{\SB@declare\SB@testtrue0}
2123 \newcommand\DeclareNonLyric{%

```

```

2124 \SB@declare\SB@testfalse\SB@testfalse%
2125 }
2126 \newcommand\DeclareNoHyphen{%
2127 \SB@declare\SB@testfalse\SB@testtrue%
2128 }

```

\SB@lettertests For speed, token tests introduced by **\DeclareLyricChar** and friends are broken out into separate macros based on category codes.

```

\SB@multitests 2129 \newcommand\SB@lettertests{}
\SB@othertests 2130 \newcommand\SB@macrotests{}
                2131 \newcommand\SB@multitests{}
                2132 \newcommand\SB@othertests{}

```

The following macros add tests to the test macros defined above. In each, $\langle arg1 \rangle$ is the test macro to which the test should be added, $\langle arg2 \rangle$ and $\langle arg3 \rangle$ is the code to be executed at scanning-time and at hyphenation-time if the test succeeds (or “0” if no action is to be performed), and $\langle arg4 \rangle$ is the token to which the currently scanned token should be compared to determine whether it matches.

\SB@addDtest A definition-test: The test succeeds if the next lyric token has the same meaning (at test-time) of the non-macro, non-active character token that was given to the **\Declare** macro.

```

2133 \newcommand\SB@addDtest[3]{%
2134 \ifx0#2\else%
2135 \def#1{\csname SB@!\meaning\SB@next\endcsname}}%
2136 \expandafter\def\csname SB@!\meaning\SB@next\endcsname{\global#2}%
2137 \fi%
2138 \ifx0#3\else%
2139 \expandafter\def\csname SB@HT@\meaning\SB@next\endcsname{\global#3}%
2140 \fi%
2141 }

```

\SB@addNtest A name-test: The test succeeds if the next token is a non-**\outer** macro or active character and its **\stringified** name matches the **\stringified** name of the control sequence that was given to the **\Declare** macro.

```

2142 \newcommand\SB@addNtest[4]{%
2143 \ifx0#2\else%
2144 \def#1{\csname SB@!\SB@nextname\endcsname}}%
2145 \expandafter\def\csname SB@!\string#4\endcsname{\global#2}%
2146 \fi%
2147 \ifx0#3\else%
2148 \expandafter\def\csname SB@HT@\string#4\endcsname{\global#3}%
2149 \fi%
2150 }

```

\SB@addMtest A multibyte-test: The test succeeds if the next lyric token is the beginning of a UTF-8 encoded multibyte character sequence that matches the multibyte sequence given to the **\Declare** macro.

```

2151 \newcommand\SB@addMtest[7]{%
2152   \edef\SB@temp{%
2153     \string#4%
2154     \ifx\relax#5\else\string#5\fi%
2155     \ifx\relax#6\else\string#6\fi%
2156     \ifx\relax#7\else\string#7\fi%
2157   }%
2158   \ifx0#2\else%
2159     \def#1{{\csname SB@!\SB@nextname\endcsname}}%
2160     \expandafter\def\csname SB@!\SB@temp\endcsname{\global#2}%
2161   \fi%
2162   \ifx0#3\else%
2163     \expandafter\def\csname SB@HT@\SB@temp\endcsname{\global#3}%
2164   \fi%
2165 }

```

The following code declares the common intra-word macros provided by $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{E}}\mathrm{X}$ (as listed on p. 52 of The $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{E}}\mathrm{X}$ book) to be lyric-continuing.

```

2166 \DeclareLyricChar\`
2167 \DeclareLyricChar\'
2168 \DeclareLyricChar\^
2169 \DeclareLyricChar\"
2170 \DeclareLyricChar\~
2171 \DeclareLyricChar\=
2172 \DeclareLyricChar\.
2173 \DeclareLyricChar\u
2174 \DeclareLyricChar\v
2175 \DeclareLyricChar\H
2176 \DeclareLyricChar\t
2177 \DeclareLyricChar\c
2178 \DeclareLyricChar\d
2179 \DeclareLyricChar\b
2180 \DeclareLyricChar\oe
2181 \DeclareLyricChar\OE
2182 \DeclareLyricChar\ae
2183 \DeclareLyricChar\AE
2184 \DeclareLyricChar\aa
2185 \DeclareLyricChar\AA
2186 \DeclareLyricChar\o
2187 \DeclareLyricChar\O
2188 \DeclareLyricChar\l
2189 \DeclareLyricChar\L
2190 \DeclareLyricChar\ss
2191 \DeclareLyricChar\i
2192 \DeclareLyricChar\j
2193 \DeclareLyricChar\/
2194 \DeclareLyricChar\-
2195 \DeclareLyricChar\discretionary

```

We declare `\par` to be lyric-ending without introducing hyphenation. The

`\par` macro doesn't actually appear in most verses because we use `\obeylines`, but we include a check for it in case the user says `\par` explicitly somewhere.

```
2196 \DeclareNoHyphen\par
```

`\SB@bracket` This macro gets invoked by the `\[` macro whenever a chord begins. It gets redefined by code that turns chords on and off, so its initial definition doesn't matter.

```
2197 \newcommand\SB@bracket{}
```

`\SB@chord` Begin parsing a chord macro. While parsing the chord name argument, we set some special catcodes so that chord names can use `#` and `&` for sharps and flats.

```
2198 \newcommand\SB@chord{\SB@begincname\SB@@chord}
```

`\SB@begincname` While parsing a chord name, certain characters such as `#` and `&` are temporarily set active so that they can be used as abbreviations for sharps and flats. To accomplish this, `\SB@begincname` must always be invoked before any macro whose argument is a chord name, and `\SB@endcname` must be invoked at the start of the body of any macro whose argument is a chord name. To aid in debugging, we also temporarily set `\langle return \rangle` characters and chord macros `\outer`. This will cause TeX to halt with a runaway argument error on the correct source line if the user forgets to type a closing end-brace (a common typo). Colon characters are also set non-active to avoid a conflict between the Babel French package and the `\gtab` macro.

```
2199 \newcommand\SB@begincname{}
2200 {\catcode'\^^M\active
2201 \gdef\SB@begincname{%
2202   \begingroup%
2203     \catcode'\#\active\catcode'\&\active%
2204     \catcode':12\relax%
2205     \catcode'\^^M\active\SB@outer\def^^M{}}%
2206     \SB@outer\def\{[%
2207     \chordlocals\relax%
2208   }
2209 }
2210 \newcommand\SB@endcname{}
2211 \let\SB@endcname\endgroup
```

`\SB@nbsp` Non-breaking spaces (`~`) should be treated as spaces by the lyric-scanner code that follows. Although `~` is usually an active character that creates a non-breaking space, some packages (e.g., the Babel package) redefine it to produce accents, which are typically not lyric-ending. To distinguish the real `~` from redefined `~`, we need to create a macro whose definition is the non-breaking space definition normally assigned to `~`.

```
2212 \newcommand\SB@nbsp{}
2213 \def\SB@nbsp{\nobreakspace{}}
```

`\SB@firstchord` The following conditional is true when the current chord is the first chord in a sequence of one or more chord macros.

```
2214 \newif\ifSB@firstchord\SB@firstchordtrue
```

`\SB@@chord` Finish processing the chord name and then begin scanning the implicit lyric argument that follows it. This is the main entrypoint to the lyric-scanner code.

```

2215 \newcommand*\SB@@chord{}
2216 \def\SB@@chord#1{%
2217   \SB@endcname%
2218   \ifSB@firstchord%
2219     \setbox\SB@lyricbox\hbox{\kern\SB@tabindent}%
2220     \global\SB@tabindent\z@%
2221     \SB@lyric{}%
2222     \SB@numhyps\z@%
2223     \SB@spcinit%
2224     \setbox\SB@chordbox\box\voidb@x%
2225   \fi%
2226   \SB@setchord{#1}%
2227   \SB@firstchordfalse%
2228   \let\SB@dothis\SB@chstart%
2229   \SB@chscan%
2230 }
```

`\MultiwordChords` The `\SB@spcinit` macro is invoked at the beginning of the lyric scanning process.

`\SB@spcinit` By default it does nothing, but if `\MultiwordChords` is invoked, it initializes the lyric-scanner state to process spaces as part of lyrics.

```

2231 \newcommand\SB@spcinit{}
2232 \newcommand\MultiwordChords{%
2233   \def\SB@spcinit{%
2234     \let\SB@chdone\SB@chlyrdone%
2235     \let\SB@chimpspace\SB@chnxtdone%
2236     \let\SB@chexpspace\SB@chnxtdone%
2237     \let\SB@chespace\SB@chendspace%
2238   }%
2239 }
```

`\SB@chscan` This is the main loop of the lyric-scanner. Peek ahead at the next token without consuming it, then execute a loop body based on the current state (`\SB@dothis`), and finally go to the next iteration (`\SB@donext`).

```

2240 \newcommand\SB@chscan{%
2241   \let\SB@nextname\relax%
2242   \futurelet\SB@next\SB@chmain%
2243 }
2244 \newcommand\SB@chmain{\SB@dothis\SB@donext}
```

`\SB@chnxtrelax` To shorten the lyric parser macros that follow and thereby improve their speed,
`\SB@chnxtstep` we here define some abbreviations for common logic in untaken branches.

```

\SB@chnxtdone 2245 \newcommand\SB@chnxtrelax{\let\SB@donext\relax}
2246 \newcommand\SB@chnxtstep{\let\SB@donext\SB@chstep}
2247 \newcommand\SB@chnxtdone{\let\SB@donext\SB@chdone}
```

Warning: In the lyric-scanner macros that follow, `\SB@next` might be a macro declared `\outer`. This means that it must *never* be passed as an argument to a macro and it must never explicitly appear in any untaken branch of a conditional. If it does, the `TEX` parser will complain of a runaway argument when it tries to skip over an `\outer` macro while consuming tokens at high speed.

`\SB@chstart` We begin lyric-scanning with two special cases: (1) If the chord macro is immediately followed by another chord macro with no intervening whitespace, drop out of the lyric scanner and reenter it when the second macro is parsed. The chord texts will get concatenated together above the lyric that follows. (2) If the chord macro is immediately followed by one or more quote tokens, then consume them all and output them *before* the chord. This causes the chord to sit above the actual word instead of the left-quote or left-double-quote symbol, which looks better.

```

2248 \newcommand\SB@chstart{%
2249   \ifx\SB@next\[\SB@chnxtrelax%
2250   \else\ifx\SB@next\SB@activehat\SB@chnxtrelax%
2251   \else\ifx\SB@next\ch\SB@chnxtrelax%
2252   \else\ifx\SB@next\mch\SB@chnxtrelax%
2253   \else\ifx\SB@next'\SB@chnxtstep%
2254   \else\ifx\SB@next'\SB@chnxtstep%
2255   \else\ifx\SB@next"\SB@chnxtstep%
2256   \else%
2257     \the\SB@lyric%
2258     \SB@lyric{}%
2259     \SB@firstchordtrue%
2260     \let\SB@dothis\SB@chnorm%
2261     \SB@chnorm%
2262   \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
2263 }
```

`\SB@chnorm` First, check to see whether the lyric token is a letter. Since that's the most common case, we do this check first for speed.

```

2264 \newcommand\SB@chnorm{%
2265   \ifcat\noexpand\SB@next A%
2266   \SB@testtrue\SB@lettertests%
2267   \ifSB@test%
2268     \SB@chespace\SB@chnxtstep%
2269   \else%
2270     \SB@chnxtdone%
2271   \fi%
2272 \else%
2273   \SB@chtrymacro%
2274 \fi%
2275 }
```

`\SB@chtrymacro` Next, check to see whether it's a macro or active character. We do these checks next because these are the only cases when the token might be `\outer`. Once we eliminate that ugly possibility, we can write the rest of the code without having to worry about putting `\SB@next` in places where `\outer` tokens are illegal.


```

2276 \newcommand\SB@chtrymacro{%
2277   \ifcat\noexpand\SB@next\relax%
2278     \SB@chmacro%
2279   \else%
2280     \SB@chother%
2281   \fi%
2282 }

```

\SB@chother The token is not a letter, macro, or active character. The only other cases of interest are spaces, braces, and hyphens. If it's one of those, take the appropriate action; otherwise end the lyric here. Since we've eliminated the possibility of macros and active characters, we can be sure that the token isn't **\outer** at this point.

```

2283 \newcommand\SB@chother{%
2284   \ifcat\noexpand\SB@next\@sptoken%
2285     \SB@chexpspace%
2286   \else\ifcat\noexpand\SB@next\bgroup%
2287     \SB@chespace\let\SB@donext\SB@chbgroup%
2288   \else\ifcat\noexpand\SB@next\egroup%
2289     \SB@chespace\let\SB@donext\SB@chegroup%
2290   \else\ifx\SB@next-%
2291     \SB@numhyps\@ne\relax%
2292     \SB@lyricnohyp\expandafter{\the\SB@lyric}%
2293     \let\SB@dothis\SB@chhyph%
2294     \SB@chespace\SB@chnxtstep%
2295   \else\ifcat\noexpand\SB@next.%
2296     \SB@testtrue\SB@othertests%
2297     \ifSB@test%
2298       \SB@chespace\SB@chnxtstep%
2299     \else%
2300       \SB@chnxtdone%
2301     \fi%
2302   \else%
2303     \SB@chespace\SB@chnxtstep%
2304   \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
2305 }

```

\SB@chmacro The lyric-scanner has encountered a macro or active character. If it's **\outer**, it should never be used in an argument, so stop here.

```

2306 \newcommand\SB@chmacro{%
2307   \SB@outertest%
2308   \ifSB@test%
2309     \SB@chnxtdone%
2310   \else%
2311     \let\SB@donext\SB@chgetname%
2312   \fi%
2313 }

```

`\SB@chgetname` We've encountered a non-`\outer` macro or active character. Use `\string` to get its name, but insert the token back into the input stream since we haven't decided whether to consume it yet.

```
2314 \newcommand\SB@chgetname[1]{%
2315   \edef\SB@nextname{\string#1}%
2316   \SB@@chmacro\SB@donext#1%
2317 }
```

`\SB@@chmacro` The lyric-scanner has encountered a non-`\outer` macro or active character. Its `\stringified` name has been stored in `\SB@nextname`. Test to see whether it's a known macro or the beginning of a multibyte-encoded international character. If the former, dispatch some macro-specific code to handle it. If the latter, grab the full multibyte sequence and include it in the lyric.

```
2318 \newcommand\SB@@chmacro{%
2319   \ifx\SB@next\SB@activehat%
2320     \SB@chnxtdone%
2321   \else\ifx\SB@next\SB@par%
2322     \SB@chnxtdone%
2323   \else\ifx\SB@next\measurebar%
2324     \SB@chmbar%
2325   \else\ifx\SB@next\mbar%
2326     \SB@chmbar%
2327   \else\ifx\SB@next\ch%
2328     \SB@chespace\let\SB@donext\SB@chlig%
2329   \else\ifx\SB@next\mch%
2330     \SB@chespace\let\SB@donext\SB@mchlig%
2331   \else\ifx\SB@next\ %
2332     \SB@chimpspace%
2333   \else\ifx\SB@next\SB@nbsp%
2334     \SB@chimpspace%
2335   \else%
2336     \SB@UTFtest\SB@next%
2337     \ifcase\SB@cnt\SB@chothermac%
2338     \or\or\SB@chespace\let\SB@donext\SB@chsteptwo%
2339     \or\SB@chespace\let\SB@donext\SB@chstepthree%
2340     \or\SB@chespace\let\SB@donext\SB@chstepfour\fi%
2341   \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
2342 }
```

`\SB@chothermac` The lyric-scanner has encountered a macro or active character that is not `\outer`, not a known macro that requires special treatment, and not a multibyte international character. First, check the macro's name (stored in `\SB@nextname`) to see whether it begins with a non-escape character. If so, it's probably an accenting or punctuation character made active by the `inputenc` or `babel` packages. Most such characters should be included in the lyric, so include it by default; otherwise exclude it by default. The user can override the defaults using `\DeclareLyricChar` and friends.

```
2343 \newcommand\SB@chothermac{%
```

```

2344 \SB@testfalse%
2345 \afterassignment\iffalse%
2346 \SB@cnt\expandafter'\SB@nextname x\fi%
2347 \ifnum\the\catcode\SB@cnt=\z@\else\SB@testtrue\fi%
2348 \SB@macrotests%
2349 \ifSB@test%
2350 \SB@chespace\SB@chnxtstep%
2351 \else%
2352 \SB@chnxtdone%
2353 \fi%
2354 }

\SB@chstep We've encountered one or more tokens that should be included in the lyric text.
\SB@chsteptwo (More than one means we've encountered a multibyte encoding of an international
\SB@chstepthree character.) Consume them (as arguments to this macro) and add them to the list
\SB@chstepfour of tokens we've already consumed.

\SB@chmulti 2355 \newcommand\SB@chstep[1]{%
\SB@chmstop 2356 \SB@lyric\expandafter{\the\SB@lyric#1}%
2357 \SB@chscan%
2358 }
2359 \newcommand\SB@chsteptwo[2]{\SB@chmulti{#1#2}{\string#1\string#2}}
2360 \newcommand\SB@chstepthree[3]{%
2361 \SB@chmulti{#1#2#3}{\string#1\string#2\string#3}%
2362 }
2363 \newcommand\SB@chstepfour[4]{%
2364 \SB@chmulti{#1#2#3#4}{\string#1\string#2\string#3\string#4}%
2365 }
2366 \newcommand\SB@chmulti[2]{%
2367 \def\SB@next{#1}%
2368 \edef\SB@nextname{#2}%
2369 \SB@testtrue\SB@multitests%
2370 \ifSB@test%
2371 \SB@lyric\expandafter{\the\SB@lyric#1}%
2372 \expandafter\SB@chscan%
2373 \else%
2374 \expandafter\SB@chmstop%
2375 \fi%
2376 }
2377 \newcommand\SB@chmstop{\expandafter\SB@chdone\SB@next}

\SB@chhyph We've encountered a hyphen. Continue to digest hyphens, but terminate as soon
as we see anything else.
2378 \newcommand\SB@chhyph{%
2379 \ifx\SB@next-%
2380 \advance\SB@numhyps\@ne\relax%
2381 \SB@chnxtstep%
2382 \else%
2383 \SB@chnxtdone%
2384 \fi%
2385 }

```

`\SB@chimpspace` We've encountered an implicit or explicit space. Normally this just ends the lyric,
`\SB@chexpspace` but if `\MultiwordChords` is active, these macros both get redefined to process the space.

```
2386 \newcommand\SB@chimpspace{}
2387 \let\SB@chimpspace\SB@chnxtdone
2388 \newcommand\SB@chexpspace{}
2389 \let\SB@chexpspace\SB@chnxtdone
```

`\SB@chespace` The `\SB@chespace` macro gets invoked by the lyric-scanner just before a non-
`\SB@chendspace` space token is about to be accepted as part of an under-chord lyric. Normally it does nothing; however, if `\MultiwordChords` is active, it gets redefined to do one of three things: (1) Initially it is set equal to `\SB@chendspace` so that if the very first token following the chord macro is not a space, the lyric-scanner macros are redefined to process any future spaces encountered. Otherwise the very first token is a space, and the lyric ends immediately. (2) While scanning non-space lyric tokens, it is set to nothing, since no special action needs to be taken until we encounter a sequence of one or more spaces. (3) When a space token is encountered (but not the very first token after the chord macro), it is set equal to `\SB@chendspace` again so that `\SB@chendspace` is invoked once the sequence of one or more space tokens is finished.

```
2390 \newcommand\SB@chespace{}
2391 \newcommand\SB@chendspace{%
2392   \let\SB@chdone\SB@chlyrdone%
2393   \def\SB@chexpspace{\SB@chbspace\SB@chexpspace}%
2394   \def\SB@chimpspace{\SB@chbspace\SB@chimpspace}%
2395   \def\SB@chespace{}%
2396 }
```

`\SB@chbspace` The `\SB@chbspace` macro gets invoked when `\MultiwordChords` is active and the
`\SB@chgetspace` lyric-scanner has encountered a space token that was immediately preceded by a non-space token. Before processing the space, we add all lyrics seen so far to the `\SB@lyricbox` and check its width. If we've seen enough lyrics to match or exceed the width of the chord, a space stops the lyric-scanning process. (This is important because it minimizes the size of the chord box, providing as many line breakpoints as possible to the paragraph-formatter.)

Otherwise we begin scanning space tokens without adding them to the lyric until we see what the next non-space token is. If the next non-space token would have ended the lyric anyway, roll back and end the lyric here, reinserting the space tokens back into the token stream. If the next non-space token would have been included in the lyric, the lyric-scanner proceeds as normal.

```
2397 \newcommand\SB@chbspace{%
2398   \setbox\SB@lyricbox\hbox{%
2399     \unhbox\SB@lyricbox%
2400     \the\SB@lyric%
2401   }%
2402   \SB@lyric{}%
2403   \ifdim\wd\SB@lyricbox<\wd\SB@chordbox%
```

```

2404 \let\SB@chbstok= \SB@next%
2405 \def\SB@chexpSPACE{\let\SB@donext\SB@chgetSPACE}%
2406 \let\SB@chimpSPACE\SB@chnxtstep%
2407 \let\SB@chSPACE\SB@chendSPACE%
2408 \let\SB@chdone\SB@chspcdone%
2409 \else%
2410 \let\SB@chimpSPACE\SB@chnxtdone%
2411 \let\SB@chexpSPACE\SB@chnxtdone%
2412 \fi%
2413 }
2414 \newcommand\SB@chgetSPACE{%
2415 \SB@appendSP\SB@lyric%
2416 \let\SB@nextname\relax%
2417 \afterassignment\SB@chscan%
2418 \let\SB@next= }

```

\SB@chmbar We've encountered a measure bar. Either ignore it or end the lyric text, depending on whether measure bars are being displayed.

```

2419 \newcommand\SB@chmbar{%
2420 \ifmeasures%
2421 \SB@chnxtdone%
2422 \else%
2423 \SB@chSPACE\SB@chnxtstep%
2424 \fi%
2425 }

```

\SB@chbgroup We've encountered a begin-group brace. Consume the entire group that it begins, and add it to the list of tokens including the begin and end group tokens.

```

2426 \newcommand\SB@chbgroup[1]{%
2427 \SB@lyric\expandafter{\the\SB@lyric{#1}}%
2428 \SB@chscan%
2429 }

```

\SB@chegroup We've encountered an end-group brace whose matching begin-group brace must have come before the chord macro itself. This forcibly ends the lyric text.
\SB@chegrpscan Before stopping, we must set **\SB@next** to the token following the brace and
\SB@chegrpmacro **\SB@nextname** to its **\stringified** name so that **\SB@emitChord** will know whether
\SB@chegrpouter to add hyphenation. Therefore, we temporarily consume the end-group brace, then
\SB@chegrpname scan the next token without consuming it, and finally reinsert the end-group brace
\SB@chegrpdone and stop.

```

2430 \newcommand\SB@chegroup{%
2431 \let\SB@nextname\relax%
2432 \afterassignment\SB@chegrpscan%
2433 \let\SB@next= }
2434 \newcommand\SB@chegrpscan{%
2435 \futurelet\SB@next\SB@chegrpmacro%
2436 }
2437 \newcommand\SB@chegrpmacro{%
2438 \ifcat\noexpand\SB@next\relax%

```

```

2439 \expandafter\SB@chegrpouter%
2440 \else%
2441 \expandafter\SB@chegrpdone%
2442 \fi%
2443 }
2444 \newcommand\SB@chegrpouter{%
2445 \SB@outertest%
2446 \ifSB@test%
2447 \expandafter\SB@chegrpdone%
2448 \else%
2449 \expandafter\SB@chegrpname%
2450 \fi%
2451 }
2452 \newcommand\SB@chegrpname[1]{%
2453 \edef\SB@nextname{\string#1}%
2454 \SB@chegrpdone#1%
2455 }
2456 \newcommand\SB@chegrpdone{\SB@chdone\egroup}

```

\SB@chlig We've encountered a \ch chord-over-ligature macro, or an \mch measurebar-and-chord-over-ligature macro. Consume it and all of its arguments, and load them into some registers for future processing. (Part of the ligature might fall into this lyric text or might not, depending on whether we decide to add hyphenation.) Then end the lyric text here.

```

2457 \newcommand\SB@chlig[5]{%
2458 \gdef\SB@ligpre{\#3}%
2459 \gdef\SB@ligpost{\[#2]{\#4}}%
2460 \gdef\SB@ligfull{\[\SB@noreplay{\hphantom{\{\lyricfont#3}\}\#2}{\#5}}%
2461 \SB@chdone%
2462 }
2463 \newcommand\SB@mchlig[5]{%
2464 \SB@lyric\expandafter{\the\SB@lyric#3}%
2465 \let\SB@next\measurebar%
2466 \edef\SB@nextname{\string\measurebar}%
2467 \gdef\SB@ligpost{\measurebar\[#2]{\#4}}%
2468 \gdef\SB@ligfull{\measurebar\[#2]{\#4}}%
2469 \SB@chdone%
2470 }

```

\SB@chdone The \SB@chdone macro is invoked when we've decided to end the lyric text (usually because we've encountered a non-lyric token). Normally this expands to \SB@chlyrdone, which adds any uncontributed lyric material to the \SB@lyricbox and jumps to the main chord formatting macro. However, if \MultiwordChords is active and if the lyric ended with a sequence of one or more space tokens, then we instead reinsert the space tokens into the token stream without contributing them to the \SB@lyricbox.

```

2471 \newcommand\SB@chlyrdone{%
2472 \setbox\SB@lyricbox\hbox{%
2473 \unhbox\SB@lyricbox%

```

```

2474 \ifnum\SB@numhyphs=\@ne%
2475 \the\SB@lyricnohyp%
2476 \else%
2477 \the\SB@lyric%
2478 \fi%
2479 }%
2480 \SB@emitichord%
2481 }
2482 \newcommand\SB@chspcdone{%
2483 \let\SB@nextname\relax%
2484 \let\SB@next= \SB@chbstok%
2485 \expandafter\SB@emitichord\the\SB@lyric%
2486 }
2487 \newcommand\SB@chdone{}
2488 \let\SB@chdone\SB@chlyrdone

```

\SB@ligpre The following three macros record arguments passed to a **\ch** macro that concludes the lyric text of the **\[]** macro currently being processed.

```

\SB@ligpost
\SB@ligfull 2489 \newcommand\SB@ligpre{}
2490 \newcommand\SB@ligpost{}
2491 \newcommand\SB@ligfull{}

```

\SB@clearlig Clear all ligature-chord registers.

```

2492 \newcommand\SB@clearlig{%
2493 \gdef\SB@ligpre{}%
2494 \gdef\SB@ligpost{}%
2495 \gdef\SB@ligfull{}%
2496 }

```

16.11 Chords

\SB@emitichord The **\SB@emitichord** macro does the actual work of typesetting chord text over lyric text, introducing appropriate hyphenation when necessary. We begin by consulting **\SB@next**, which should have been set by the lyric-scanning code in §16.10 to the token that immediately follows the lyric under this chord, to determine whether the lyric text ends on a word boundary.

```

2497 \newcommand\SB@emitichord{%
2498 \ifSB@inverse\else\ifSB@inchorus\else\SB@errchord\fi\fi%
2499 \SB@testfalse%
2500 \ifcat\noexpand\SB@next\@sptoken\SB@testtrue\fi%
2501 \ifcat\noexpand\SB@next.\SB@testtrue\fi%
2502 \ifx\SB@next\SB@par\SB@testtrue\fi%
2503 \ifx\SB@next\egroup\SB@testtrue\fi%
2504 \ifx\SB@next\endgroup\SB@testtrue\fi%
2505 {\curname%
2506 \SB@HT\ifx\SB@nextname\relax\meaning\SB@next\else\SB@nextname\fi%
2507 \endcurname}%
2508 \ifSB@test\SB@wordendstrue\else\SB@wordendsfalse\fi%

```

Next, compare the width of the lyric to the width of the chord to determine whether hyphenation might be necessary. The original lyric text might have ended in a string of one or more explicit hyphens, enumerated by `\SB@numhyps`. If it ended in exactly one, the lyric-scanning code suppresses that hyphen so that we can here add a new hyphen that floats out away from the word when the chord above it is long. If it ended in more than one (e.g., the encoding of an en- or em-dash) then the lyric-scanner leaves it alone; we must not add any hyphenation or float the dash away from the word.

There is also code here to insert a penalty that discourages linebreaking immediately before lyricless chords. Beginning a wrapped line with a lyricless chord is undesirable because it makes it look as though the wrapped line is extra-indented (due to the empty lyric space below the chord). It should therefore happen only as a last resort.

```

2509 \SB@dimen\wd\SB@chordbox%
2510 \ifvmode\leavevmode\fi%
2511 \SB@brokenwordfalse%
2512 \ifdim\wd\SB@lyricbox>\z0%
2513 \ifdim\SB@dimen>\wd\SB@lyricbox%
2514 \ifSB@wordends\else\SB@brokenwordtrue\fi%
2515 \fi%
2516 \else%
2517 \SB@skip\lastskip%
2518 \unskip\penalty200\hskip\SB@skip%
2519 \fi%
2520 \ifnum\SB@numhyps>\z0%
2521 \ifnum\SB@numhyps>\@ne%
2522 \SB@brokenwordfalse%
2523 \else%
2524 \SB@brokenwordtrue%
2525 \fi%
2526 \fi%
```

If lyrics are suppressed on this line (e.g., by using `\nolyrics`), then just typeset the chord text on the natural baseline.

```

2527 \SB@testfalse%
2528 \ifnolyrics\ifdim\wd\SB@lyricbox=\z0\SB@testtrue\fi\fi%
2529 \ifSB@test%
2530 \unhbox\SB@chordbox%
2531 \gdef\SB@temp{\expandafter\SB@clearlig\SB@ligfull}%
2532 \else%
```

Otherwise, typeset the chord above the lyric on a double-height line.

```

2533 \vbox{\clineparams\relax%
2534 \ifSB@brokenword%
2535 \global\setbox\SB@lyricbox\hbox{%
2536 \unhbox\SB@lyricbox%
2537 \SB@ligpre%
2538 }%
2539 \SB@maxmin\SB@dimen<{\wd\SB@lyricbox}%

```



```

2540      \advance\SB@dimen.5em%
2541      \hbox to\SB@dimen{\unhbox\SB@chordbox\hfil}%
2542      \hbox to\SB@dimen{%
2543        \unhcopy\SB@lyricbox\hfil\char\hyphenchar\font\hfil%
2544      }%
2545      \global\SB@cnt\@m%
2546      \gdef\SB@temp{\expandafter\SB@clearlig\SB@ligpost}%
2547    \else%
2548      \box\SB@chordbox%
2549      \hbox{%
2550        \unhcopy\SB@lyricbox%
2551        \global\SB@cnt\spacefactor%
2552        \hfil%
2553      }%
2554      \gdef\SB@temp{\expandafter\SB@clearlig\SB@ligfull}%
2555    \fi%
2556  }%

```

If the chord is lyricless, inhibit a linebreak immediately following it. This prevents sequences of lyricless chords (which often end lines) from being wrapped in the middle, which looks very unsightly and makes them difficult to read. If the chord has a lyric but it doesn't end on a word boundary, insert an appropriate penalty to prevent linebreaking without hyphenation. Also preserve the spacefactor in this case, which allows \LaTeX to fine-tune the spacing between consecutive characters in the word that contains the chord.

```

2557    \ifSB@wordends%
2558      \ifdim\wd\SB@lyricbox>\z@\else\nobreak\fi%
2559    \else%
2560      \penalty%
2561      \ifnum\SB@numhyphs>\z@\exhyphenpenalty%
2562      \else\ifSB@brokenword\hyphenpenalty%
2563      \else\@M\fi\fi%
2564      \spacefactor\SB@cnt%
2565    \fi%
2566  \fi%

```

Finally, end the macro with some code that handles the special case that this chord is immediately followed by a chord-over-ligature macro. The code above sets `\SB@temp` to the portion of the ligature that should come after this chord but before the chord that tops the ligature. This text must be inserted here.

```

2567    \SB@temp%
2568  }

```

`\SB@accidental` Typeset an accidental symbol as a superscript within a chord. Since chord names are often in italics but math symbols like sharp and flat are not, we need to do some kerning adjustments before and after the accidental to position it as if it were italicized. The pre-adjustment is just a simple italic correction using `\/`. The post-adjustment is based on the current font's slant-per-point metric.

```

2569 \newcommand\SB@accidental[1]{%

```

```

2570 \/%
2571 \m@th#1%
2572 \SB@dimen-\fontdimen\@ne\font%
2573 \advance\SB@dimen.088142\p%
2574 \ifdim\SB@dimen<\z@%
2575     \kern\f@size\SB@dimen%
2576 \fi%
2577 }}

\sharpsymbol When changing the sharp or flat symbol, change these macros rather than changing
\flatsymbol \shrp or \flt. This will ensure that other shortcuts like # and & will reflect your
change.

2578 \newcommand\sharpsymbol{\ensuremath{\sim\#}}
2579 \newcommand\flatsymbol{\raise.5ex\hbox{{\SB@flatsize$\flat$}}}

\shrp These macros typeset sharp and flat symbols.
\flt 2580 \newcommand\shrp{\SB@accidental\sharpsymbol}
2581 \newcommand\flt{\SB@accidental\flatsymbol}

\DeclareFlatSize The \flat math symbol is too small for properly typesetting chord names. (Its
size was designed for staff notation not textual chord names.) The correct size for
the symbol should be approximately 30% larger than the current superscript size,
or 90% of the base font size  $b$ . However, simply computing  $0.9b$  does not work well
because most fonts do not render well in arbitrary sizes. To solve the problem,
we must therefore choose an appropriate size individually for each possible base
font size  $b$ . This is the solution adopted by the rest of LATEX for such things. For
example, LATEX's \DeclareMathSizes macro defines an appropriate superscript
size for each possible base font size. The macro below creates a similar macro that
that defines an appropriate flat-symbol size for each possible base font size.

2582 \newcommand\DeclareFlatSize[2]{%
2583     \expandafter\xdef\csname SB@flatsize@#1\endcsname{#2}%
2584 }
2585 \DeclareFlatSize\@vpt\@vpt
2586 \DeclareFlatSize\@vipt\@vipt
2587 \DeclareFlatSize\@viipt\@viipt
2588 \DeclareFlatSize\@viiipt\@viiipt
2589 \DeclareFlatSize\@ixpt\@ixpt
2590 \DeclareFlatSize\@xpt\@xpt
2591 \DeclareFlatSize\@xipt\@xipt
2592 \DeclareFlatSize\@xiipt\@xiipt
2593 \DeclareFlatSize\@xivpt\@xivpt
2594 \DeclareFlatSize\@xvipt\@xvipt
2595 \DeclareFlatSize\@xxpt\@xxpt
2596 \DeclareFlatSize\@xxvpt\@xxvpt

\SB@flatsize Select the correct flat symbol size based on the current font size.

2597 \newcommand\SB@flatsize{%
2598     \ifundefined{SB@flatsize@f@size}{\sim\#}{%

```

```

2599     \expandafter\fontsize%
2600     \csname SB@flatsize@\f@size\endcsname\f@baselineskip%
2601     \selectfont%
2602 }%
2603 }

```

In the following code, the `\ch`, `\mch`, `\[`, and `^` macros are each defined to be a single macro that then expands to the real definition. This is necessary because the top-level definitions of each must stay the same in order to allow the lyric-scanning code to uniquely identify them, yet their internal definitions must be redefined by code that turns chords and/or measure bars on and off. Such code redefines `\SB@ch`, `\SB@mch`, `\SB@bracket`, and `\SB@rechord` to effect a change of mode without touching the top-level definitions.

`\ch` The `\ch` macro puts a chord atop a ligature without breaking the ligature. Normally this just means placing the chord midway over the unbroken ligature (ignoring the third argument completely). However, when a previous chord macro `\SB@ch` encounters it while scanning ahead in the input stream to parse its lyric, the `\ch` macro itself is not actually expanded at all. Instead, the chord macro scans ahead, `\SB@@ch` spots the `\ch` macro, gobbles it, and then steals its arguments, breaking the ligature with hyphenation. Thus, the `\ch` macro is only actually expanded when the ligature shouldn't be broken.

```

2604 \newcommand\ch{\SB@ch}
2605 \newcommand\SB@ch{}
2606 \newcommand\SB@ch@on{\SB@begincname\SB@@ch}
2607 \newcommand*\SB@@ch[1]{\SB@endcname\SB@@@ch{#1}}
2608 \newcommand*\SB@@@ch[4]{\[\SB@noreplay{\hphantom{#2}}{#1}#4}
2609 \newcommand*\SB@ch@off[4]{#4}

```

`\mch` The `\mch` macro is like `\ch` except that it also introduces a measure bar.

```

\SB@mch 2610 \newcommand\mch{\SB@mch}
\SB@mch@m 2611 \newcommand\SB@mch{}
\SB@mch@on 2612 \newcommand*\SB@mch@m[4]{#2\measurebar#3}
\SB@@mch 2613 \newcommand\SB@mch@on{\SB@begincname\SB@@mch}
\SB@@@mch 2614 \newcommand*\SB@@mch[1]{\SB@endcname\SB@@@mch{#1}}
2615 \newcommand*\SB@@@mch[4]{#2\measurebar\[#1]#3}

```

`\SB@activehat` This macro must always contain the current definition of the `^` chord-replay active character, in order for the lyric scanner to properly identify it and insert proper hyphenation when necessary.

```

2616 \newcommand\SB@activehat{%
2617   \ifmmode^ \else \expandafter\SB@rechord\fi%
2618 }

```

`\SB@loadactives` It's cumbersome to have to type `\shrp`, `\flt`, and `\mbar` every time you want a sharp, flat, or measure bar, so within verses and choruses we allow the hash, ampersand, and pipe symbols to perform the those functions too. It's also cumbersome to have to type something like `\chord{Am}{lyric}` to produce each chord. As an easier alternative, we here define `\[Am]` to typeset chords.

```

2619 \newcommand\SB@loadactives{}
2620 {
2621   \catcode'\active
2622   \catcode'\#active
2623   \catcode'\|active
2624   \catcode'\^active
2625   \global\let&\flt
2626   \global\let#\shrp
2627   \global\let|\measurebar
2628   \global\let^\SB@activehat
2629   \gdef\SB@loadactives{%
2630     \catcode'\^ifchorded\active\else9 \fi%
2631     \catcode'\|ifmeasures\active\else9 \fi%
2632     \def\[\SB@bracket}%
2633   }
2634 }

```

16.12 Chord Replaying

\SB@trackch While inside a verse where the chord history is being remembered for future verses, **\SB@trackch** is true.

```
2635 \newif\ifSB@trackch
```

\SB@cr@ Reserve token registers to record a history of the chords seen in a verse.

```

2636 \newtoks\SB@cr@
2637 \newtoks\SB@ctail

```

\SB@creg The following control sequence equals the token register being memorized into or replayed from.

```
2638 \newcommand\SB@creg{}
```

\newchords Allocate a new chord-replay register to hold memorized chords.

```

2639 \newcommand\newchords[1]{%
2640   \ifundefined{SB@cr@#1}{%
2641     \expandafter\newtoks\csname SB@cr@#1\endcsname%
2642     \global\csname SB@cr@#1\endcsname{\}%
2643   }{\SB@errdup{#1}}%
2644 }

```

\memorize Saying **\memorize** throws out any previously memorized list of chords and starts **\SB@memorize** memorizing chords until the end of the current verse or chorus.

```

2645 \newcommand\memorize{%
2646   \ifnextchar[\SB@memorize{\SB@memorize[]}%
2647 }
2648 \newcommand\SB@memorize{
2649 \def\SB@memorize[#1]{%
2650   \ifundefined{SB@cr@#1}{\SB@errreg{#1}}{%
2651     \SB@trackchtrue%

```

```

2652 \global\expandafter\let\expandafter\SB@creg%
2653 \csname SB@cr@#1\endcsname%
2654 \global\SB@creg{\}%
2655 }%
2656 }

```

`\replay` Saying `\replay` stops any memorization and begins replaying memorized chords.

```

\SB@replay 2657 \newcommand\replay{\@ifnextchar[\SB@replay\SB@@replay}
\SB@@replay 2658 \newcommand\SB@replay{
2659 \def\SB@replay[#1]{%
2660 \@ifundefined{SB@cr@#1}{\SB@errreg{#1}}{%
2661 \SB@trackchfalse%
2662 \global\expandafter\let\expandafter\SB@creg%
2663 \csname SB@cr@#1\endcsname%
2664 \global\SB@ctail\SB@creg%
2665 }%
2666 }
2667 \newcommand\SB@@replay{%
2668 \SB@trackchfalse%
2669 \global\SB@ctail\SB@creg%
2670 }

```

`\SB@rechord` Replay the same chord that was in a previous verse.

```

\SB@@rechord 2671 \newcommand\SB@rechord{
2672 \newcommand\SB@@rechord{%
2673 \SB@ifempty\SB@ctail{%
2674 \SB@errreplay%
2675 \SB@toks{}%
2676 \let\SB@donext\@gobble%
2677 }{%
2678 \SB@lop\SB@ctail\SB@toks%
2679 \let\SB@donext\SB@chord%
2680 \let\SB@noreplay\@gobble%
2681 }%
2682 \expandafter\SB@donext\the\SB@toks}%
2683 }

```

`\ifSB@nohat` The `\ifSB@nohat` conditional is set to false when a chord macro contains a `^` in its argument. This suppresses the recording mechanism momentarily so that replays will skip this chord.

```

2684 \newif\ifSB@nohat

```

`\SB@noreplay` Sometimes material must be added to a chord but omitted when the chord is replayed. We accomplish this by enclosing such material in `\SB@noreplay` macros, which are set to `\@gobble` just before a replay and reset to `\@firstofone` at other times.

```

2685 \newcommand\SB@noreplay{
2686 \let\SB@noreplay\@firstofone

```

16.13 Guitar Tablatures

The song book software not only supports chord names alone, but can also typeset guitar tablature diagrams. The macros for producing these diagrams are found here.

\SB@fretwidth Set the width of each vertical string in the tablature diagram.

```

2687 \newlength\SB@fretwidth
2688 \setlength\SB@fretwidth{6\p@}

```

\SB@fretnum Typeset a fret number to appear to the left of the diagram.

```

2689 \newcommand\SB@fretnum[1]{%
2690   \sffamily\fontsize{@xpt}@xpt\selectfont#1%
2691 }%

```

\SB@onfret Typeset one string of one fret with $\langle arg1 \rangle$ typeset overtop of it (usually a dot or nothing at all).

```

2692 \newcommand\SB@onfret[1]{%
2693   \rlap{\hbox to\SB@fretwidth{\hfil\vrule\@height6\p@\hfil}}%
2694   \hbox to\SB@fretwidth{\hfil#1\hfil}%
2695 }

```

\SB@atopfret Typeset material (given by $\langle arg1 \rangle$) to be placed above a string in the tablature diagram.

```

2696 \newcommand\SB@atopfret[1]{%
2697   \hbox to\SB@fretwidth{\hfil#1\hfil}%
2698 }

```

\SB@fretbar Typeset a horizontal fret bar of width \SB@dimen.

```

2699 \newcommand\SB@fretbar{%
2700   \nointerlineskip%
2701   \hbox to\SB@dimen{%
2702     \advance\SB@dimen-\SB@fretwidth%
2703     \advance\SB@dimen.4\p@%
2704     \hfil%
2705     \vrule\@width\SB@dimen\@height.4\p@\@depth\z@%
2706     \hfil%
2707   }%
2708   \nointerlineskip%
2709 }

```

\SB@topempty Above a string in a tablature diagram there can be nothing, an \times , or an \circ .

\SB@topX

```

2710 \newcommand\SB@topempty{\SB@atopfret\relax}

```

\SB@topO

```

2711 \newcommand\SB@topX{\SB@atopfret{%
2712   \hbox{%
2713     \kern-.2\p@
2714     \fontencoding{OMS}\fontfamily{cmsy}%
2715     \fontseries{m}\fontshape{n}%
2716     \fontsize{@vipt}@vipt\selectfont\char\tw@%

```

```

2717 \kern-.2\p@%
2718 }%
2719 }}
2720 \newcommand\SB@top0{\SB@atopfret{%
2721 \vrule\@width\z@\@height4.3333\p@\@depth.8333\p@%
2722 \lower.74\p@\hbox{%
2723 \fontencoding{OMS}\fontfamily{cmsy}%
2724 \fontseries{m}\fontshape{n}%
2725 \fontsize\@xpt\@xpt\selectfont\char14%
2726 }%
2727 }}

```

`\SB@fretempty` On a string in a fret diagram there can be nothing or a filled circle.

```

\SB@fretempty 2728 \newcommand\SB@fretempty{\SB@onfret\relax}
\SB@fretempty 2729 \newcommand\SB@fretempty{\SB@onfret{%
2730 \hbox{%
2731 \fontencoding{OMS}\fontfamily{cmsy}%
2732 \fontseries{m}\fontshape{n}%
2733 \fontsize\@xpt\@xpt\selectfont\char15%
2734 }%
2735 }}

```

`\SB@finger` If we're including fingering info in the tablature diagram, then below each string there might be a number.

```

2736 \newcommand\SB@finger[1]{%
2737 \SB@atopfret{\sffamily\fontsize\@vpt\@vpt\selectfont#1}%
2738 }

```

`\ifSB@gettabind` Lyrics under tablature diagrams look odd if they aren't aligned with the leftmost string of the diagram. To accomplish this, the following two macros record the amount by which a lyric under this tablature diagram must be indented to position it properly.

```

2739 \newif\ifSB@gettabind\SB@gettabindfalse
2740 \newdimen\SB@tabindent

```

`\SB@targfret` Reserve some macro names in which to store the three pieces of the second argument to the `\gtab` macro. The first is for the fret number, the second is for the *strings* info, and the last is for the *fingering* info.

```

2741 \newcommand\SB@targfret{}
2742 \newcommand\SB@targstr{}
2743 \newcommand\SB@targfing{}

```

In general `\gtab` macros often appear inside chord macros, which means that their arguments have already been scanned by the time the `\gtab` macro itself is expanded. This means that catcodes cannot be reassigned (without resorting to ε -TeX).

We therefore adopt the alternative strategy of converting each token in the *strings* and *fingering* arguments of a `\gtab` macro into a control sequence (using `\csname`). We can then temporarily assign meanings to those control sequences and replay the arguments to achieve various effects.

`\SB@csify` Convert all tokens in the first argument to control sequences and store the resulting sequence into the macro given by the first argument. Store the length in tokens into counter register `\SB@cnt`.

```

2744 \newcommand\SB@csify[2]{%
2745   \SB@toks{}%
2746   \SB@cnt\z@%
2747   \SB@@csify#2\SB@@csify%
2748   \edef#1{\the\SB@toks}%
2749 }
2750 \newcommand\SB@@csify[1]{%
2751   \ifx#1\SB@@csify\else%
2752     \advance\SB@cnt\@ne%
2753     \SB@toks\expandafter{\the\SB@toks\csname#1\endcsname}%
2754     \expandafter\SB@@csify%
2755   \fi%
2756 }

```

`\SB@gttop` Different meanings are assigned to digits, X's, and O's depending on whether we
`\SB@gtinit` are currently typesetting the material overtop the diagram, the interior of the
`\SB@gtinc` diagram, or the fingering numbers below the diagram. These meanings are set by
`\SB@gtset` `\SB@gttop`, `\SB@gtinit` & `\SB@gtinc`, and `\SB@gtset`, respectively.

```

2757 \newcommand\SB@gttop{%
2758   \let\X\SB@topX\let\0\SB@top0\let\0\0\let\1\SB@topempty%
2759   \let\2\1\let\3\1\let\4\1\let\5\1%
2760   \let\6\1\let\7\1\let\8\1\let\9\1%
2761 }
2762 \newcommand\SB@gtinit{%
2763   \let\X\SB@freempty\let\0\X\let\0\X\let\1\SB@frethit%
2764   \let\2\X\let\3\X\let\4\X\let\5\X%
2765   \let\6\X\let\7\X\let\8\X\let\9\X%
2766 }
2767 \newcommand\SB@gtinc{%
2768   \let\9\8\let\8\7\let\7\6\let\6\5\let\5\4%
2769   \let\4\3\let\3\2\let\2\1\let\1\0%
2770 }
2771 \newcommand\SB@gtset[2]{%
2772   \let\X#1\let\0\X\let\0\X%
2773   \def\1{#21}\def\2{#22}\def\3{#23}%
2774   \def\4{#24}\def\5{#25}\def\6{#26}%
2775   \def\7{#27}\def\8{#28}\def\9{#29}%
2776 }

```

`\SB@gtmax` To compute the height of the tablature diagram, we must identify the maximum fret number in the *(strings)* argument. This is accomplished by using the following macro in combination with `\SB@gtset` above.

```

2777 \newcommand\SB@gtmax[1]{\ifnum\SB@cnt<#1\SB@cnt#1\fi}

```


`\gtab` A `\gtab` macro begins by setting catcodes suitable for parsing a chord name as its first argument. This allows tokens like `#` and `&` to be used for sharp and flat even when `\gtab` is used outside a chord macro. Colon is reset to a non-active character while processing the second argument to avoid a potential conflict with Babel French.

```
2778 \newcommand\gtab{\SB@beginname\SB@gtab}
2779 \newcommand*\SB@gtab[1]{%
2780   \SB@endname%
2781   \begingroup%
2782     \catcode'\relax%
2783     \SB@@gtab{#1}%
2784 }
```

`\SB@@gtab` If transposition is currently taking place, allow the user to customize the behavior by redefining `\gtabtrans`. Using `\gtab` within `\gtabtrans` should go directly to `\SB@@@gtab` (otherwise an infinite loop would result!).

```
2785 \newcommand*\SB@@gtab[2]{%
2786   \endgroup%
2787   \ifnum\SB@transposefactor=\z@%
2788     \SB@@@gtab{#1}{#2}%
2789   \else%
2790     \begingroup%
2791       \let\gtab\SB@@@gtab%
2792       \gtabtrans{#1}{#2}%
2793     \endgroup%
2794   \fi%
2795 }
```

`\gtabtrans` By default, transposed guitar tablatures just display the transposed chord name and omit the diagram. Transposing a tablature diagram requires manual judgment calls for most stringed instruments, so we can't do it automatically.

```
2796 \newcommand\gtabtrans[2]{\transposehere{#1}}
```

`\SB@@@gtab` Typeset a full tablature diagram. Text $\langle arg1 \rangle$ is a chord name placed above the diagram. Text $\langle arg2 \rangle$ consists of a colon-separated list of: (1) an optional fret number placed to the left of the diagram; (2) a sequence of tokens, each of which can be `X` (to place an \times above the string), `0` or `0` (to place an \circ above the string), or one of 1 through 9 (to place a filled circle on that string at the fret of the given number); and (3) an optional sequence of tokens, each of which is either `0` (no fingering information for that string), or one of 1 through 4 (to place the given number under that string).

```
2797 \newcommand\SB@@@gtab[2]{%
2798   \let\SB@targfret\@empty%
2799   \let\SB@targstr\@empty%
2800   \let\SB@targfing\@empty%
2801   \SB@tabargs#2::\SB@tabargs%
2802   \ifx\SB@targstr\@empty%
2803     \def\SB@targstr{\0\0\0\0\0}%
2804   \else%
2805     \def\SB@targstr{\0\0\0\0\0}%
2806   \fi%
2807 }
```

```

2804 \fi%
2805 \ifvmode\leavevmode\fi%
2806 \vbox{%
2807   \normalfont\normalsize%
2808   \setbox\SB@box\hbox{%
2809     \thinspace{\printchord{\transposehere{#1}\strut}}\thinspace%
2810   }%
2811   \setbox\SB@boxii\hbox{\SB@fretnum{\SB@targfret}}%
2812   \setbox\SB@boxiii\hbox{\SB@gttop\SB@targstr}}%
2813   \hsize\wd\SB@box%
2814   \ifSB@gettabind%
2815     \global\SB@tabindent\wd\SB@boxii%
2816     \global\advance\SB@tabindent.5\SB@fretwidth%
2817     \global\advance\SB@tabindent-.5\p@%
2818   \fi%
2819   \SB@dimen\wd\SB@boxii%
2820   \advance\SB@dimen\wd\SB@boxiii%
2821   \ifdim\hsize<\SB@dimen%
2822     \hsize\SB@dimen%
2823   \else\ifSB@gettabind%
2824     \SB@dimenii\hsize%
2825     \advance\SB@dimenii-\SB@dimen%
2826     \divide\SB@dimenii\tw@%
2827     \global\advance\SB@tabindent\SB@dimenii%
2828   \fi\fi%
2829   \hbox to\hsize{\hfil\unhbox\SB@box\hfil}%
2830   \kern-\p@\nointerlineskip%
2831   \hbox to\hsize{%
2832     \hfil%
2833     \vtop{\kern\p@\kern2\p@\box\SB@boxii}%
2834     \vtop{%
2835       \SB@dimen\wd\SB@boxiii%
2836       \box\SB@boxiii%
2837       \SB@cnt\minfrets%
2838       \SB@gtset\relax\SB@gtmax\SB@targstr%
2839       \SB@gtinit%
2840       \loop%
2841         \SB@fretbar\hbox{\SB@targstr}%
2842         \advance\SB@cnt\m@ne%
2843         \ifnum\SB@cnt>\z@\SB@gtinc\repeat%
2844       \SB@fretbar%
2845       \ifx\SB@targsfing\@empty\else%
2846         \kern1.5\p@%
2847         \SB@gtset\SB@topempty\SB@finger%
2848         \hbox{\SB@targfing}%
2849       \fi%
2850     }%
2851     \hfil%
2852   }%
2853   \kern3\p@%

```

```

2854 }%
2855 \SB@gettabindfalse%
2856 }

\SB@tabargs Break the second argument to a \gtab macro into three sub-arguments. The
\SB@ctoken possible forms are: (a) strings, (b) fret:strings, (c) strings:fingering, or
(d) fret:strings:fingering. To distinguish forms (b) and (c), we count the
number of tokens before the first colon. If there is only one token, we assume it
must be form (b), since frets larger than 9 and 1-stringed instruments are both
rare. Otherwise we assume form (c).

2857 \newcommand\SB@ctoken{} \def\SB@ctoken{:}
2858 \newcommand\SB@tabargs{}
2859 \def\SB@tabargs#1:#2:#3:#4\SB@tabargs{%
2860 \def\SB@temp{#4}%
2861 \ifx\SB@temp\@empty%
2862 \SB@csify\SB@targstr{#1}%
2863 \else\ifx\SB@temp\SB@ctoken%
2864 \SB@csify\SB@targstr{#1}%
2865 \ifnum\SB@cnt>\@ne%
2866 \SB@cntii\SB@cnt%
2867 \SB@csify\SB@targfing{#2}%
2868 \SB@cnt\SB@cntii%
2869 \else%
2870 \def\SB@targfret{#1}%
2871 \SB@csify\SB@targstr{#2}%
2872 \fi%
2873 \else%
2874 \def\SB@targfret{#1}%
2875 \SB@csify\SB@targfing{#3}%
2876 \SB@csify\SB@targstr{#2}%
2877 \fi\fi%
2878 }

```

16.14 Book Sectioning

The following macros divide the song book into distinct sections, each with different headers, different song numbering styles, different indexes, etc.

```

\songchapter Format the chapter header for a chapter in a song book. By default, chapter
headers on a song book omit the chapter number, but do include an entry in the
pdf index or table of contents. Thus, the chapter has a number; it's just not
displayed at the start of the chapter.

2879 \newcommand\songchapter{%
2880 \let\SB@temp\@seccntformat%
2881 \def\@seccntformat##1{%
2882 \@startsection{chapter}{0}{\z@}%
2883 {3.5ex\@plus1ex\@minus.2ex}%
2884 {.4ex\let\@seccntformat\SB@temp}%

```

```

2885     {\sffamily\bfseries\LARGE\centering}%
2886 }

```

\songsection Format the section header for a section in a song book. This is the same as for chapter headers except at the section level.

```

2887 \newcommand\songsection{%
2888   \let\SB@temp\@seccntformat%
2889   \def\@seccntformat##1{%
2890     \@startsection{section}{1}{\z@}%
2891     {3.5ex\@plus1ex\@minus.2ex}%
2892     {.4ex\let\@seccntformat\SB@temp}%
2893     {\sffamily\bfseries\LARGE\centering}%
2894 }

```

songs Begin and end a book section. The argument is a list of indexes with which to associate songs in this section.

```

2895 \newenvironment{songs}[1]{%
2896   \ifSB@songsenv\SB@errnse\fi%
2897   \gdef\SB@indexlist{#1}%
2898   \SB@chkidxlst%
2899   \stepcounter{SB@songsnum}%
2900   \setcounter{songnum}{1}%
2901   \let\SB@sgroup\@empty%
2902   \ifinner\else\ifdim\pagetotal>\z@%
2903     \null\nointerlineskip%
2904   \fi\fi%
2905   \songcolumns\SB@numcols%
2906   \SB@songsenvtrue%
2907 }{%
2908   \commitsongs%
2909   \global\let\SB@indexlist\@empty%
2910   \ifinner\else\clearpage\fi%
2911   \SB@songsenvfalse%
2912 }

```

Each **songs** section needs a unique number to aid in hyperlinking.

```

2913 \newcounter{SB@songsnum}

```

16.15 Index Generation

The following macros generate the various types of indexes. At present there are four types:

1. A “large” index has a separate section for each capital letter and is printed in two columns.
2. A “small” index has only a single column, centered, and has no sections.
3. A “scripture” index has three columns and each entry has a comma-separated list of references.

4. An “author” index is like a large index except in bold and without the sectioning.

“Large” and “small” indexes will be chosen automatically based on the number of index entries when building a song index. The other two types are designated by the user.

As is typical of L^AT_EX indexes, generation of song book indexes requires two passes of document compilation. During the first pass, data files are generated with song titles, authors, and scripture references. An external program is then used to produce L^AT_EX source files from those data files. During the second pass of document compilation, those source files are imported to typeset all the indexes and display them in the document.

Internally, this package code uses a *four* step process to move the index data from the source .tex file to the .sxd data files.

1. While the current song box is in the midst of construction, the data is stored in a box of non-immediate write whatsit nodes.
2. The whatsits are migrated out to the top of the song box when it is finalized at `\endsong`.
3. When the song box is shipped out to the output file, T_EX expands the whatsits, causing the data to be written to the .sxc auxiliary file.
4. At the `\end{document}` line, the .sxc is processed multiple times—once for each index—to split the data into the respective .sxd files.

The first and second steps allow index references to point to the beginning of the song no matter where the indexing commands appear within the song. The third step allows T_EX to drop index entries that refer to songs that do not actually appear in the output (e.g., because of `\includeonlysongs`). It also allows index entries to refer to information that is only decided at shipout time, such as page numbers. The fourth step allows all indexing to be accomplished with at most one write register. L^AT_EX provides extremely few write registers, so using as few as possible is essential for supporting books with many indexes.

`\songtarget` This macro is invoked by each `song` environment with two arguments: (1) a suggested pdf bookmark index level, and (2) a target name to which hyperlinks for this song in the index will refer. The macro is expected to produce a suitable pdf bookmark entry and/or link target. The default definition tries to use `\pdfbookmark` if generating a PDF, and resorts to `\hypertarget` (if it exists) otherwise. The user can redefine the macro to customize how and whether bookmarks and/or links are created.

```

2914 \newcommand\songtarget[2]{%
2915   \ifnum\@ne=0\ifSB@pdf\ifx\pdfbookmark\undefined\else%
2916     \ifx\pdfbookmark\relax\else1\fi\fi\fi\relax%
2917   \pdfbookmark{#1}{\thesongnum. \songtitle}{#2}%
2918   \else\ifx\hypertarget\undefined%
```

```

2919 \else\ifx\hypertarget\relax\else%
2920   \hypertarget{#2}{\relax}%
2921 \fi\fi\fi%
2922 }

```

\songlink This macro is invoked by the index code to produce a link to a song target created by **\songtarget**. Its two arguments are: (1) the target name (same as the second argument to **\songtarget**, and (2) the text that is to be linked. The default implementation uses **\hyperlink** if it exists; otherwise it just leaves the text unlinked.

```

2923 \newcommand\songlink{%
2924   \ifnum\@ne=0\ifx\hyperlink\undefined\else%
2925     \ifx\hyperlink\relax\else1\fi\fi\relax%
2926   \expandafter\hyperlink%
2927 \else%
2928   \expandafter\@gobble%
2929 \fi%
2930 }

```

\SB@indexlist This macro records the comma-separated list of the identifiers of indexes associated with the current book section.

```

2931 \newcommand\SB@indexlist{}

```

\SB@allindexes This macro records a comma-separated list of all the index identifiers for the entire document.

```

2932 \newcommand\SB@allindexes{}
2933 \let\SB@allindexes\@empty

```

\SB@out The **\SB@out** control sequence is reserved for the write register allocated by the package code, if one is needed. (It is allocated at the first index declaration.)

```

2934 \newcommand\SB@out{}
2935 \let\SB@out\relax

```

\SB@newindex Initialize a new title, author, or scripture index.

```

2936 \newcommand\SB@newindex[4]{%
2937   \expandafter\newcommand\csname SB@idxfilename@#3\endcsname{#4}%
2938   \expandafter\newcommand\csname SB@idxsel@#3\endcsname[3]{###1}%
2939   \expandafter\newcommand\csname SB@idxref@#3\endcsname{\thesongnum}%
2940   \xdef\SB@allindexes{%
2941     \ifx\SB@allindexes\@empty\else\SB@allindexes,\fi#3%
2942   }%
2943   \if@files%
2944     \ifx\SB@out\relax%
2945       \newwrite\SB@out%
2946       \immediate\openout\SB@out=\jobname.sxc\relax%
2947     \fi%
2948     \immediate\write\SB@out{\noexpand\SB@iwrite{#3}{#2}}%
2949   \fi%
2950 }

```

`\newindex` Define a new title index. The first argument is an identifier for the index (used in constructing index-specific control sequence names). The second argument is a filename root; auxiliary file `\arg2.sxd` is where the index data is stored at the end of processing.

```

2951 \newcommand\newindex{\SB@newindex1{TITLE INDEX DATA FILE}}
2952 \@onlypreamble\newindex

```

`\newscripindex` Define a new scripture index. This is exactly like `\newindex` except that scripture references are added to the auxiliary file instead of titles.

```

2953 \newcommand\newscripindex{\SB@newindex2{SCRIPTURE INDEX DATA FILE}}
2954 \@onlypreamble\newscripindex

```

`\newauthorindex` Define a new author index. This is exactly like `\newindex` except that author info is added to the auxiliary file instead of titles.

```

2955 \newcommand\newauthorindex{\SB@newindex3{AUTHOR INDEX DATA FILE}}
2956 \@onlypreamble\newauthorindex

```

`\SB@fwrite` Write index data to a Song index Combined (`.sxc`) auxiliary file. The first argument is the identifier for the index to which the data ultimately belongs. The second argument is the data itself. The write is non-immediate so that it is only output if its enclosing song is ultimately shipped to the output file.

```

2957 \newcommand\SB@fwrite[2]{%
2958   \ifx\SB@out\relax\else%
2959     \protected@write\SB@out\SB@keepactive{\protect\SB@iwrite{#1}{#2}}%
2960   \fi%
2961 }

```

`\SB@keepactive` By default, the `inputenc` package expands Unicode characters into macro names when writing them to files. This behavior must be inhibited when writing to the `.sxc` file, since `songidx` needs the original Unicode characters for sorting. To achieve this, we temporarily redefine most active characters so that they expand to an unexpandable string version of themselves.

```

2962 \newcommand\SB@keepactive{}
2963 {\catcode'\~\active
2964  \catcode'\.12
2965  \def\#1#2{%
2966    \endgroup
2967    \expandafter\gdef\expandafter\SB@keepactive
2968    \expandafter{\SB@keepactive\def#1{#2}}%
2969  }
2970  \def\SB@temp#1#2{%
2971    \SB@cnt#1\relax
2972    \loop
2973      \begingroup
2974        \uccode'\~\SB@cnt
2975        \uccode'\.\SB@cnt
2976        \uppercase{\~.}
2977        \ifnum\SB@cnt<#2\relax

```

```

2978     \advance\SB@cnt\@ne
2979     \repeat
2980 }
2981 \SB@temp{1}{8}
2982 \SB@temp{11}{11}
2983 \SB@temp{14}{91}
2984 \SB@temp{93}{255}
2985 }

```

\SB@iwrite The line contributed by **\SB@cwrite** to the **.sxc** file is an **\SB@iwrite** macro that re-outputs the data to an appropriate **.sxd** file.

```

2986 \newcommand\SB@iwrite[2]{%
2987   \def\SB@tempii{#1}%
2988   \ifx\SB@temp\SB@tempii%
2989     \SB@toks{#2}%
2990     \immediate\write\SB@out{\the\SB@toks}%
2991   \fi%
2992 }

```

\SB@uncombine At the end of the document, the **.sxc** file can be processed multiple times to produce all the **.sxd** files without resorting to multiple write registers. Each pass activates the subset of the **\SB@iwrite** commands that apply to one index.

```

2993 \newcommand\SB@uncombine{%
2994   \ifx\SB@out\relax\else%
2995     \immediate\closeout\SB@out%
2996     \ifsongindexes%
2997       \@for\SB@temp:=\SB@allindexes\do{%
2998         \immediate\openout\SB@out=%
2999         \csname SB@idxfilename@\SB@temp\endcsname.sxd\relax%
3000         \begingroup\makeatletter\catcode'\%12\relax%
3001         \input{\jobname.sxc}\endgroup%
3002         \immediate\closeout\SB@out%
3003       }%
3004     \fi%
3005   \fi%
3006 }
3007 \AtEndDocument{\SB@uncombine}

```

\SB@songwrites The following box register stores index data until it can be migrated to the top of the song box currently under construction.

```

3008 \newbox\SB@songwrites

```

\SB@addtoindex Queue data $\langle arg2 \rangle$ associated with the current song for eventual writing to the index whose identifier is given by $\langle arg1 \rangle$.

```

3009 \newcommand\SB@addtoindex[2]{%
3010   \protected@edef\SB@tempii{#2}%
3011   \ifx\SB@tempii\@empty\else%
3012     \global\setbox\SB@songwrites\vbox{%
3013       \unvbox\SB@songwrites%

```



```

3014 \SB@fwrite{#1}{#2}%
3015 \SB@fwrite{#1}{\csname SB@idxref@#1\endcsname}%
3016 \SB@fwrite{#1}{song\theSB@songsnum-\thesongnum.%
3017 \ifnum\c@section=\z@1\else2\fi}%
3018 }%
3019 \fi%
3020 }

```

\SB@addtoindexes Add $\langle arg1 \rangle$ to all title indexes, $\langle arg2 \rangle$ to all scripture indexes, and $\langle arg3 \rangle$ to all author indexes.

```

3021 \newcommand\SB@addtoindexes[3]{%
3022 \@for\SB@temp:=\SB@indexlist\do{%
3023 \SB@addtoindex\SB@temp%
3024 {\csname SB@idxsel@\SB@temp\endcsname{#1}{#2}{#3}}%
3025 }%
3026 }

```

\SB@addtotitles Add $\langle arg1 \rangle$ to all title indexes, but leave other indexes unaffected.

```

3027 \newcommand\SB@addtotitles[1]{%
3028 \@for\SB@temp:=\SB@indexlist\do{%
3029 \csname SB@idxsel@\SB@temp\endcsname%
3030 {\SB@addtoindex\SB@temp{#1}}{}{}%
3031 }%
3032 }

```

\SB@chkidxlst Check the current list of indexes and flag an error if any are undefined.

```

3033 \newcommand\SB@chkidxlst{%
3034 \let\SB@temp\SB@indexlist%
3035 \let\SB@indexlist\@empty%
3036 \@for\SB@tempii:=\SB@temp\do{%
3037 \@ifundefined{SB@idxsel@\SB@tempii}{\SB@errnoidx\SB@tempii}{%
3038 \ifx\SB@indexlist\@empty%
3039 \SB@toks\expandafter{\SB@tempii}%
3040 \else%
3041 \SB@toks\expandafter\expandafter\expandafter{%
3042 \expandafter\SB@indexlist\expandafter,\SB@tempii}%
3043 \fi%
3044 \edef\SB@indexlist{\the\SB@toks}%
3045 }%
3046 }%
3047 }

```

\indexentry **\SB@addtoindexes** will be called automatically for each song in a section. However, **\indexentry** may be called by the user in order to add an alternative index entry for the given song. Usually this is done to index the song by its first line or some other memorable line in a chorus or verse somewhere.

```

3048 \newcommand\indexentry{\@ifnextchar[{\SB@identry*}{\SB@@identry*}}
3049 \newcommand\SB@identry{}
3050 \def\SB@identry#1[#2]#3{%

```

```

3051 \def\SB@indexlist{#2}%
3052 \SB@chkidxlst%
3053 \SB@addtoindexes{#1#3}{#3}{#3}%
3054 }}
3055 \newcommand\SB@@idxentry[2]{\SB@addtotitles{#1#2}}

\indextitleentry \indextitleentry may be used to add an alternate title for the song to the index.
(The only difference between the effects of \indexentry and \indextitleentry
is that the latter are italicized in the rendered index and the former are not.)

3056 \newcommand\indextitleentry{%
3057 \ifnextchar[{\SB@idxentry}{\SB@@idxentry}}%
3058 }

\indexsongsas The following macro allows the user to change how songs are indexed on the right
side of index entries. By default, the song's number is listed.

3059 \newcommand\indexsongsas[1]{%
3060 \ifundefined{SB@idxref@#1}%
3061 {\SB@errnoidx{#1}\@gobble}%
3062 {\expandafter\renewcommand\csname SB@idxref@#1\endcsname}%
3063 }

\SB@idxcmd The songidx index-generation program understands several different directives
\SB@@idxcmd that each dictate various aspects of how index entries are parsed, sorted, and
\authsepword displayed. Such directives should typically appear at the start of the .sxd file just
\authbyword after the header line that identifies the type of index.
\authignoreword
\titlprefixword 3064 \newcommand\SB@idxcmd[3]{%
3065 \ifx\SB@out\relax\else%
3066 \for\SB@temp:=\SB@allindexes\do{%
3067 \csname SB@idxsel@\SB@temp\endcsname%
3068 {\SB@idxcmd{#1}}{\SB@@idxcmd{#2}}{\SB@idxcmd{#3}}%
3069 }%
3070 \fi%
3071 }
3072 \newcommand\SB@@idxcmd[1]{%
3073 \def\SB@tempii{#1}%
3074 \ifx\SB@tempii\empty\else%
3075 \immediate\write\SB@out{%
3076 \noexpand\SB@iwrite{\SB@temp}{#1}%
3077 }%
3078 \fi%
3079 }
3080 \newcommand\authsepword[1]{}
3081 \newcommand\authbyword[1]{}
3082 \newcommand\authignoreword[1]{}
3083 \newcommand\titlprefixword[1]{}
3084 {\catcode'\%=12
3085 \gdef\authsepword#1{\SB@idxcmd}{%sep #1}{}}
3086 \gdef\authbyword#1{\SB@idxcmd}{%after #1}{}}
3087 \gdef\authignoreword#1{\SB@idxcmd}{%ignore #1}{}}

```

```

3088 \gdef\titleprefixword#1{\SB@idxcmd{\%prefix #1}{}}
3089 \@onlypreamble\authseword
3090 \@onlypreamble\authbyword
3091 \@onlypreamble\authignoreword
3092 \@onlypreamble\titleprefixword

```

`\SB@idxlineskip` Set the spacing between lines in an index.

```

3093 \newcommand\SB@idxlineskip[1]{%
3094   \vskip#1\p@\@plus#1\p@\@minus#1\p@%
3095 }

```

When rendering an index entry $X \dots Y$ that is too long to fit on one physical line, we must break text X and/or Y up into multiple lines. Text X should be typeset as a left-justified paragraph with a right margin of about 2em; however, its final line must not be so long that it cannot fit even the first item of list Y . Text Y should be typeset as a right-justified paragraph whose first line begins on the last line of X . However, breaking Y up the way paragraphs are normally broken up doesn't work well because that causes most of Y to be crammed into the first few lines, leaving the last line very short. This looks strange and is hard to read. It looks much better to instead break Y up in such a way that the portion of Y that is placed on each line is of approximately equal width (subject to the constraint that we don't want to introduce any more lines than are necessary). This makes it visually clear that all of these lines are associated with X . The following code performs the width computations that do this horizontal-balancing of text.

`\SB@ellipsread` Typeset an index entry of the form $X \dots Y$. In the common case, the entire entry fits on one line so we just typeset it in the usual way. If it doesn't fit on one line, we call `\SB@balancerows` for a more sophisticated treatment.

```

3096 \newcommand\SB@ellipsread[2]{%
3097   \begingroup%
3098     \SB@dimen\z@%
3099     \def\SB@temp{#1}%
3100     \SB@toks{#2}%
3101     \setbox\SB@box\hbox{%
3102       \SB@temp%
3103       \leaders\hbox to.5em{\hss.\hss}\hskip2em\@plus1fil%
3104       {\the\SB@toks}%
3105     }%
3106     \ifdim\wd\SB@box>\hsize%
3107       \SB@balancerows%
3108     \else%
3109       \hbox to\hsize{\unhbox\SB@box}\par%
3110     \fi%
3111   \endgroup%
3112 }

```

`\SB@balancerows` Typeset an index entry of the form $X \dots Y$ that doesn't fit on one line, where X is the content of macro `\SB@temp` and Y is the content of token register `\SB@toks`.

First, we must pre-compute the width w_1 of the final line of X when X is typeset as a left-justified paragraph, storing it in `\SB@dimenii`. This is necessary because in order to force \TeX to typeset the first line of Y at some chosen width w_2 , we must insert leaders of width $c - w_1 - w_2$ into the paragraph between X and Y , where c is the column width.

Computing this width w_1 is a bit tricky. We must tell \TeX that the last line of X must not be so long that it does not even have room for the first item of Y . Thus, we must strip off the first item of Y and add it (or a non-breaking space of equivalent width) to the end of X to typeset the paragraph. Then we use `\lastbox` to pull off the final line and check its width.

```

3113 \newcommand\SB@balancerows{%
3114   \edef\SB@tempii{\the\SB@toks}%
3115   \setbox\SB@box\vbox{%
3116     \SB@toks\expandafter{\expandafter\the\SB@toks\}%
3117     \SB@lop\SB@toks\SB@toks%
3118     \settowidth\SB@dimen{\the\SB@toks}%
3119     \advance\SB@dimen-.5em%
3120     \leftskip.5cm%
3121     {\hbadness\@M\hfuzz\maxdimen%
3122       \hskip-.5cm\relax\SB@temp\unskip\nobreak%
3123       \hskip\SB@dimen\nobreak%
3124       \rightskip2em\@plus1fil\par}%
3125     \setbox\SB@box\lastbox%
3126     \setbox\SB@box\hbox{%
3127       \unhbox\SB@box%
3128       \unskip\unskip\unpenalty%
3129       \unpenalty\unskip\unpenalty%
3130     }%
3131     \expandafter%
3132   }%
3133   \expandafter\SB@dimenii\the\wd\SB@box\relax%

```

Next, compute the smallest width w_2 such that the index entry text produced by `\SB@multiline` with `\SB@dimen= w_2` has no more lines than with `\SB@dimen` set to the maximum available width for the right-hand side. This effectively horizontal-balances the right-hand side of the index entry text, making all lines of Y roughly equal in width without introducing any extra lines.

```

3134   \SB@dimen\hsize%
3135   \advance\SB@dimen-.5cm%
3136   \setbox\SB@box\vbox{%
3137     \SB@multiline{\hbadness\@M\hfuzz\maxdimen}%
3138   }%
3139   \SB@dimeniii.5\SB@dimen%
3140   \SB@dimeniv\SB@dimeniii%
3141   \loop%
3142     \SB@dimeniv.5\SB@dimeniv%
3143     \setbox\SB@boxii\vbox{%
3144       \SB@dimen\SB@dimeniii%
3145       \SB@multiline{\hbadness\@M\hfuzz\maxdimen}%

```

```

3146 }%
3147 \ifnum\SB@cnt<\@M%
3148   \ifdim\ht\SB@boxii>\ht\SB@box%
3149     \advance\SB@dimeniii\SB@dimeniv%
3150   \else%
3151     \SB@dimen\SB@dimeniii%
3152     \advance\SB@dimeniii-\SB@dimeniv%
3153   \fi%
3154 \else%
3155   \advance\SB@dimeniii\SB@dimeniv%
3156 \fi%
3157 \ifdim\SB@dimeniv>2\p@\repeat%
3158 \setbox\SB@box\box\voidb@x%
3159 \setbox\SB@boxii\box\voidb@x%

```

Finally, typeset the results based on the quantities computed above.

```

3160 \SB@multiline\relax%
3161 }

```

\SB@multiline Create a paragraph containing text $X \dots Y$ where X is the content of `\SB@temp`, Y is the content of `\SB@tempii`, and Y is restricted to width `\SB@dimen` (but may span multiple lines of that width). Dimen register `\SB@dimenii` must be set with the expected width of the final line of X . The first argument contains any parameter definitions that should be in effect when X is processed.

Note that the expansion of `\SB@tempii`, which may contain `\SB@idxitemsep`, depends on `\SB@dimen`. Therefore, the redefinition of `\SB@dimen` at the start of this macro must not be removed!

```

3162 \newcommand\SB@multiline[1]{%
3163   \begingroup%
3164     \SB@dimen-\SB@dimen%
3165     \advance\SB@dimen\hsize%
3166     \SB@dimenii-\SB@dimenii%
3167     \advance\SB@dimenii\SB@dimen%
3168     {\#1\hskip-.5cm\relax\SB@temp\unskip\nobreak%
3169     \SB@maxmin\SB@dimenii<\{1.5em}%
3170     \leftskip.5cm\rightskip2em\@plus1fil%
3171     \interlinepenalty\@M%
3172     \leaders\hbox to.5em{\hss.\hss}\hskip\SB@dimenii\@plus1fill%
3173     \nobreak{\SB@tempii\kern-2em}%
3174     \par\global\SB@cnt\badness}%
3175   \endgroup%
3176 }%

```

\SB@idxitemsep If text Y in index entry $X \dots Y$ has multiple items in a list, those items should be separated by `\` macros instead of by commas. The `\` macro will be assigned the definition of `\SB@idxitemsep` during index generation, which produces the comma along with the complex spacing required if Y ends up being broken into multiple lines. In particular, it forces each wrapped line of Y to be right-justified with left margin at least `\SB@dimen`.

```

3177 \newcommand\SB@idxitemsep{%
3178   ,\kern-2em\penalty-8\hskip2.33em\@minus.11em%
3179   \hskip-\SB@dimen\@plus-1fill%
3180   \vadjust{}\nobreak%
3181   \hskip\SB@dimen\@plus1fill\relax%
3182 }

```

The following set of macros and environments are intended for use in the .sbx files that are automatically generated by an index-generating program; they shouldn't normally appear in the user's .tex or .sbd files directly. However, they are named as exported macros (no @ symbols) since they are used outside the package code and are therefore not strictly internal.

idxblock Some indexes are divided into blocks (e.g., one for each letter of the alphabet or one for each book of the bible). Each such block should be enclosed between `\begin{idxblock}{X}` and `\end{idxblock}` lines, where X is the title of the block. The actual definition of the `idxblock` environment is set within the initialization code for each type of index (below).

```

3183 \newenvironment{idxblock}[1]{}{}

```

\idxentry Within each `idxblock` environment there should be a series of `\idxentry` and/or `\idxaltentry` macros, one for each line of the index. Again, the exact definitions of these macros will vary between index types.

```

3184 \newcommand\idxentry[2]{}
3185 \newcommand\idxaltentry[2]{}

```

SB@lgidx Some indexes actually have two definitions for each `idxblock` environment—one for use when there are few enough entries to permit a small style index, and another **SB@smidx** for use in a large style index. These macros will be redefined appropriately within the initialization code for each type of index.

```

3186 \newenvironment{SB@lgidx}[1]{}{}
3187 \newenvironment{SB@smidx}[1]{}{}

```

\SB@idxsetup Set various parameters for a column of an index environment.

```

3188 \newcommand\SB@idxsetup{%
3189   \hsize\SB@colwidth%
3190   \parskip\z@skip\parfillskip\z@skip\parindent\z@%
3191   \baselineskip\f@size\p@\@plus\p@\@minus\p@%
3192   \lineskiplimit\z@\lineskip\p@\@plus\p@\@minus\p@%
3193   \hyphenpenalty\@M\exhyphenpenalty\@M%
3194 }

```

\SB@makeidxcolumn Break off enough material from `\SB@box` to create one column of the index.

```

3195 \newcommand\SB@makeidxcolumn{%
3196   \ifdim\ht\SB@box=\z@%
3197     \hskip\hsize\relax%
3198   \else%
3199     \splittopskip\z@skip\splitmaxdepth\maxdepth%

```

```

3200 \vsplit\SB@box to\SB@dimen%
3201 \global\setbox\SB@box\vbox{%
3202 \SB@idxsetup%
3203 \splitbotmark%
3204 \unvbox\SB@box%
3205 }%
3206 \fi%
3207 }

```

`\SB@oneidxpage` Construct one full page of the index. The definition of `\SB@oneidxpage` is generated dynamically based on the type of index and number of columns.

```

3208 \newcommand\SB@oneidxpage{}

```

`\SB@displayindex` Create an index with title $\langle arg2 \rangle$ and with $\langle arg1 \rangle$ columns (must be a literal constant). Input the index contents from external file $\langle arg3 \rangle$, which is expected to be a \TeX file.

```

3209 \newcommand\SB@displayindex[3]{%
3210 \ifsongindexes\beginngroup%
3211 \SB@colwidth\hsize%
3212 \advance\SB@colwidth-#1\columnsep%
3213 \advance\SB@colwidth\columnsep%
3214 \divide\SB@colwidth#1%
3215 \setbox\SB@envbox\vbox{%
3216 \let\SB@temp\songsection%
3217 \ifx\chapter\undefined\else%
3218 \ifx\chapter\relax\else%
3219 \let\SB@temp\songchapter%
3220 \fi%
3221 \fi%
3222 \SB@temp{#2}%
3223 }%

```

The `.sbx` index file might not exist (e.g., if this is the first pass through the \TeX compiler). If it exists, first try typesetting its content as a small index (one column, centered, with no divisions).

```

3224 \IfFileExists{\csname SB@idxfilename@#3\endcsname.sbx}{%
3225 \ifsepindexes%
3226 \global\setbox\SB@box\vbox{%
3227 \null%
3228 \vfil%
3229 \unvcopy\SB@envbox%
3230 \vskip.5in\@minus.3in\relax%
3231 \hbox to\hsize{%
3232 \hfil%
3233 \vbox{%
3234 \SB@idxsetup%
3235 \renewenvironment{idxblock}[1]%
3236 {\begin{SB@smidx}{###1}}{\end{SB@smidx}}%
3237 \let\SB@idxitemsep%
3238 \input{\csname SB@idxfilename@#3\endcsname.sbx}%

```

```

3239         }%
3240         \hfil%
3241     }%
3242     \vskip\z@\@plus2fil\relax%
3243 }%

```

Test whether the resulting small index fits within one page. If not, re-typeset it as a large index.

```

3244     {\vbadness\@M\vfuze\maxdimen%
3245     \splitmaxdepth\maxdepth\splittopskip\z@skip%
3246     \global\setbox\SB@boxii\vsplit\SB@box to\textheight}%
3247     \ifvoid\SB@box%
3248     \box\SB@boxii%
3249     \else%
3250     \SB@lgindex{#1}{#3}%
3251     \fi%
3252     \else%
3253     \SB@lgindex{#1}{#3}%
3254     \fi%
3255 }%

```

If the .sbx file doesn't exist, then instead typeset a page with a message on it indicating that the document must be compiled a second time in order to generate the index.

```

3256     {%
3257     \ifsepindexes%
3258     \vbox to\textheight{%
3259     \vfil%
3260     \unvbox\SB@envbox%
3261     \vskip1em\relax%
3262     \hbox to\hsize{\hfil[Index not yet generated.]\hfil}%
3263     \vskip\z@\@plus2fil\relax%
3264     }%
3265     \else%
3266     \unvbox\SB@envbox%
3267     \hbox to\hsize{\hfil[Index not yet generated.]\hfil}%
3268     \fi%
3269     }%
3270     \ifsepindexes\clearpage\fi%
3271     \endgroup\fi%
3272 }

```

\SB@lgindex Typeset a large-style index. We begin by typesetting the entire index into a box.

```

3273 \newcommand\SB@lgindex[2]{%
3274 \global\setbox\SB@box\vbox{%
3275 \renewenvironment{idxblock}[1]%
3276 {\begin{SB@lgidx}{##1}}{\end{SB@lgidx}}%
3277 \let\SB@idxitemsep%
3278 \SB@idxsetup%
3279 \input{\csname SB@idxfilename@#2\endcsname.sbx}%

```



```

3280 \unskip%
3281 }%

```

Next, we split the box into columns and pages until the last page is reached.

```

3282 \SB@toks{\SB@makeidxcolumn}%
3283 \SB@cnt#1\relax%
3284 \loop\ifnum\SB@cnt>\@ne%
3285   \SB@toks\expandafter{\the\SB@toks%
3286     \kern\columnsep\SB@makeidxcolumn}%
3287   \advance\SB@cnt\m@ne%
3288 \repeat%
3289 \edef\SB@oneidxpage{\the\SB@toks}%
3290 \unvbox\SB@envbox%
3291 \vskip.2in\relax%
3292 \nointerlineskip%
3293 \null%
3294 \nointerlineskip%
3295 \SB@cnt\vbadness\vbadness\@M%
3296 \SB@dimenii\vfuzz\vfuzz\maxdimen%
3297 \loop%
3298   \SB@dimen\textheight%
3299   \ifinner\else\kern\z@\advance\SB@dimen-\pagetotal\fi%
3300   \global\setbox\SB@boxii\copy\SB@box%
3301   \global\setbox\SB@boxiii\hbox{\SB@oneidxpage}%
3302   \ifdim\ht\SB@box>\z@%
3303     \box\SB@boxiii%
3304     \vfil\break%
3305 \repeat%

```

The final page of the index should have all equal-height columns instead of a few full columns followed by some short or empty columns at the end. To achieve this, we re-typeset the final page, trying different column heights until we find one that causes the material to span an equal percentage of all the columns on the page.

```

3306 \SB@dimenii\ht\SB@boxii%
3307 \divide\SB@dimenii#1\relax%
3308 \SB@maxmin\SB@dimen>\SB@dimenii%
3309 \loop%
3310   \global\setbox\SB@box\copy\SB@boxii%
3311   \global\setbox\SB@boxiii\hbox{\SB@oneidxpage}%
3312   \ifdim\ht\SB@box>\z@%
3313     \advance\SB@dimen\p@%
3314 \repeat%
3315 \box\SB@boxiii%
3316 \global\setbox\SB@boxii\box\voidb@x%
3317 \vbadness\SB@cnt\vfuzz\SB@dimenii%
3318 }

```

\showindex Create an index with title $\langle arg2 \rangle$ based on the data associated with index identifier $\langle arg3 \rangle$ (which was passed to `\newindex`). Optional argument $\langle arg1 \rangle$ specifies the number of columns. This macro calls the appropriate index-creation macro

depending on the type of index that $\langle arg3 \rangle$ was declared to be.

```

3319 \newcommand\showindex[3][0]{%
3320   \ifundefined{SB@idxsel@#3}{\SB@errnoidx{#3}}{%
3321     \expandafter\let\expandafter\SB@temp\csname SB@idxsel@#3\endcsname%
3322     \SB@cnt#1\relax%
3323     \ifnum\SB@cnt<\@ne\SB@cnt\SB@temp232\relax\fi%
3324     \expandafter\SB@temp%
3325     \expandafter\SB@maketitleindex%
3326     \expandafter\SB@makescripindex%
3327     \expandafter\SB@makeauthorindex%
3328     \expandafter{\the\SB@cnt}%
3329     {#2}{#3}%
3330   }%
3331 }
```

\SB@maketitleindex Create a song title index. $\langle arg1 \rangle$ is a column count, $\langle arg2 \rangle$ is the title, and $\langle arg3 \rangle$ is the index identifier (which was passed to **\newindex**).

```

3332 \newcommand\SB@maketitleindex{%
3333   \ifnum\idxheadwidth>\z@%
3334     \renewenvironment{SB@lidx}[1]{
3335       \hbox{\SB@colorbox\idxbgcolor{\vbox{
3336         \hbox to\idxheadwidth{\{ \idxheadfont\relax##1\}\hfil}}%
3337       }}}%
3338       \nobreak\vskip3\p@ \@plus2\p@ \@minus2\p@ \nointerlineskip%
3339       {\penalty-50\vskip5\p@ \@plus5\p@ \@minus4\p@}%
3340     \else%
3341       \renewenvironment{SB@lidx}[1]{\{ \}%
3342     \fi%
3343     \renewenvironment{SB@smidx}[1]{\{ \}%
3344     \renewcommand\idxentry[2]{%
3345       \SB@ellipsread{\idxtitlefont\relax\ignorespaces##1\unskip}%
3346       {\{ \idxrefsfont\relax##2\}}%
3347     }%
3348     \renewcommand\idxaltentry[2]{%
3349       \SB@ellipsread{\idxlyricfont\relax\ignorespaces##1\unskip}%
3350       {\{ \idxrefsfont\relax##2\}}%
3351     }%
3352     \SB@displayindex%
3353 }
```

\SB@idxcolhead In a scripture index, this macro remembers the current book of the bible we're in so that new columns can be headed with "Bookname (continued)".

```

3354 \newcommand\SB@idxcolhead{}
```

\SB@idxheadsep Add vertical space following the header line that begins (or continues) a section of a scripture index.

```

3355 \newcommand\SB@idxheadsep{%
3356   \SB@dimen4\p@%
3357   \advance\SB@dimen-\prevdepth%
```

```

3358 \SB@maxmin\SB@dimen<\z@%
3359 \SB@dimenii\SB@dimen%
3360 \SB@maxmin\SB@dimenii>\p@%
3361 \vskip\SB@dimen\@plus\p@\@minus\SB@dimenii%
3362 }

```

\SB@idxcont Typeset the “Bookname (continued)” line that continues a scripture index section when it spans a column break.

```

3363 \newcommand\SB@idxcont[1]{%
3364 \hbox to\hsize{\idxcont{#1}}\hfil}%
3365 \nobreak%
3366 \SB@idxheadsep\nointerlineskip%
3367 }

```

\SB@makescripindex Create a scripture index. $\langle arg1 \rangle$ is a column count, $\langle arg1 \rangle$ is the title, and $\langle arg2 \rangle$ is the index identifier (which was passed to **\newscripindex**).

```

3368 \newcommand\SB@makescripindex{%
3369 \renewenvironment{SB@lgidx}[1]{%
3370 \gdef\SB@idxcolhead{##1}%
3371 \hbox to\hsize{\idxbook{##1}}\hfil}%
3372 \nobreak%
3373 \SB@idxheadsep\nointerlineskip%
3374 }{%
3375 \mark{\noexpand\relax}%
3376 \penalty-20\vskip3\p@\@plus3\p@\relax%
3377 }%
3378 \renewenvironment{SB@smidx}[1]
3379 {\begin{SB@lgidx}{##1}}{\end{SB@lgidx}}%
3380 \renewcommand\idxentry[2]{%
3381 \SB@ellipsread{\hskip.25cm\idxscripfont\relax##1}%
3382 {\idxrefsfont\relax##2}}%
3383 \SB@toks\expandafter{\SB@idxcolhead}%
3384 \mark{\noexpand\SB@idxcont{the\SB@toks}}%
3385 }%
3386 \renewcommand\idxaltentry[2]{\SB@erridx{a scripture}}%
3387 \SB@displayindex%
3388 }

```

\SB@makeauthorindex Create an author index. $\langle arg1 \rangle$ is a column count, $\langle arg2 \rangle$ is the title, and $\langle arg2 \rangle$ is the index identifier (which was passed to **\newauthindex**).

```

3389 \newcommand\SB@makeauthorindex{%
3390 \renewenvironment{SB@lgidx}[1]{-}{-}%
3391 \renewenvironment{SB@smidx}[1]{-}{-}%
3392 \renewcommand\idxentry[2]{%
3393 \SB@ellipsread{\idxauthfont\relax\sffcode'\@m##1}}%
3394 {\idxrefsfont##2}}%
3395 }%
3396 \renewcommand\idxaltentry[2]{\SB@erridx{an author}}%
3397 \SB@displayindex%
3398 }

```

16.16 Error Messages

We break error messages out into separate macros here in order to reduce the length (in tokens) of the more frequently used macros that do actual work. This can result in a small speed improvement on slower machines.

```
\SB@Error All errors and warnings will be reported as coming from package “songs”.
\SB@Warn 3399 \newcommand\SB@Error{\PackageError{songs}}
          3400 \newcommand\SB@Warn{\PackageWarning{songs}}

\SB@errspos
3401 \newcommand\SB@errspos{%
3402   \SB@Error{Illegal \protect\songpos\space argument}{The argue%
3403     nt to \protect\songpos\space must be a number from 0 to 3.}%
3404 }

\SB@errnse
3405 \newcommand\SB@errnse{%
3406   \SB@Error{Nested songs environments are not supported}{End th%
3407     e previous songs environment before beginning the next one.}%
3408 }

\SB@errpl
3409 \newcommand\SB@errpl{%
3410   \SB@Error{\protect\includeonlysongs\space not permitted with%
3411     in a songs environment}{\protect\includeonlysongs\space can o%
3412     nly be used in the document preamble or between songs environ%
3413     ments in the document body.}%
3414 }

\SB@errrtopt
3415 \newcommand\SB@errrtopt{%
3416   \SB@Error{Cannot display chords in a rawtext dump}{You have u%
3417     sed the rawtext option in the \protect\usepackage\space lin%
3418     e and have either used the chorded option as well or have use%
3419     d the \protect\chordson\space macro subsequently.}%
3420 }

\SB@warnrc
3421 \newcommand\SB@warnrc{%
3422   \SB@Warn{The \protect\repchoruses\space feature will not wor%
3423     k when the number of columns is set to zero}%
3424 }

\SB@errboo
3425 \newcommand\SB@errboo{%
3426   \SB@Error{Encountered \protect\beginsong\space without seein%
3427     g an \protect\endsong\space for the previous song}%
3428   {Song \thesongnum\space might be missing a%
3429     n \protect\endsong\space line.}%
3430 }
```

```

\SB@errbor
3431 \newcommand\SB@errbor{%
3432 \SB@Error{Encountered \protect\beginsong\space without seein%
3433 g an \protect\endscripture\space for the preceding scriptur%
3434 e quotation}{A scripture quotation appearing after son%
3435 g \thesongnum\space might be missing a%
3436 n \protect\endscripture\space line.}%
3437 }

\SB@erreov
3438 \newcommand\SB@erreov{%
3439 \SB@Error{Encountered \protect\endsong\space without seein%
3440 g an \protect\endverse\space for the preceding verse}{Son%
3441 g \thesongnum\space has a \protect\beginverse\space%
3442 line with no matching \protect\endverse\space line.}%
3443 }

\SB@erreoc
3444 \newcommand\SB@erreoc{%
3445 \SB@Error{Encountered \protect\endsong\space without seein%
3446 g an \protect\endchorus\space for the preceding chorus}{Son%
3447 g \thesongnum\space has a \protect\beginchorus\space%
3448 line with no matching \protect\endchorus\space line.}%
3449 }

\SB@erreor
3450 \newcommand\SB@erreor{%
3451 \SB@Error{Encountered \protect\endsong\space without seein%
3452 g an \protect\endscripture for the preceding scripture quot%
3453 e}{A scripture quote appearing before song \thesongnum\space%
3454 ended with \protect\endsong\space instead of wit%
3455 h \protect\endscripture.}%
3456 }

\SB@erreot
3457 \newcommand\SB@erreot{%
3458 \SB@Error{Encountered \protect\endsong\space with no matchin%
3459 g \protect\beginsong}{Before song \thesongnum\space there wa%
3460 s an \protect\endsong\space with no matchin%
3461 g \protect\beginsong.}%
3462 }

\SB@errbv
3463 \newcommand\SB@errbv{%
3464 \SB@Error{Encountered \protect\beginverse\space without seein%
3465 g an \protect\endverse\space for the preceding verse}{Son%
3466 g \thesongnum\space might have a verse that has n%
3467 o \protect\endendverse\space line.}%
3468 }

```

```

\SB@errbvc
3469 \newcommand\SB@errbvc{%
3470 \SB@Error{Encountered \protect\beginverse\space without seein%
3471 g an \protect\endchorus\space for the preceding chorus}{Son%
3472 g \thesongnum\space might have a chorus that has n%
3473 o \protect\endchorus\space line.}%
3474 }

\SB@errbvt
3475 \newcommand\SB@errbvt{%
3476 \SB@Error{Encountered \protect\beginverse\space without firs%
3477 t seeing a \protect\beginsong\space line}{Before son%
3478 g \thesongnum, there is a \protect\beginverse\space line no%
3479 t contained in any song.}%
3480 }

\SB@errevc
3481 \newcommand\SB@errevc{%
3482 \SB@Error{Encountered \protect\endverse\space while process%
3483 ing a chorus}{Song \thesongnum\space might hav%
3484 e a \protect\beginchorus\space concluded by a%
3485 n \protect\endverse\space instead of an \protect\endchorus.}%
3486 }

\SB@errevo
3487 \newcommand\SB@errevo{%
3488 \SB@Error{Encountered \protect\endverse\space without firs%
3489 t seeing a \protect\beginverse}{Song \thesongnum\space m%
3490 ight have an \protect\endverse\space with no matchin%
3491 g \protect\beginverse.}%
3492 }

\SB@errvt
3493 \newcommand\SB@errvt{%
3494 \SB@Error{Encountered an \protect\endverse\space outside o%
3495 f any song}{Before song \thesongnum, there is a%
3496 n \protect\endverse\space line not preceded b%
3497 y a \protect\beginsong\space line.}%
3498 }

\SB@erretex
3499 \newcommand\SB@erretex{%
3500 \SB@Error{The \protect\repchoruses\space feature requires e-%
3501 TeX compatibility}{Your version of LaTeX2e does not appear t%
3502 o be e-TeX compatible. Find a distribution that includes e-T%
3503 eX support in order to use this feature.}%
3504 }

```

\SB@errbcv

```
3505 \newcommand\SB@errbcv{%
3506 \SB@Error{Encountered \protect\beginchorus\space without see%
3507 ing an \protect\endverse\space for the preceding verse}{Son%
3508 g \thesongnum\space might hav%
3509 e a \protect\beginverse\space with no match%
3510 ing \protect\endverse.}%
3511 }
```

\SB@errbcc

```
3512 \newcommand\SB@errbcc{%
3513 \SB@Error{Encountered \protect\beginchorus\space without see%
3514 ing an \protect\endchorus\space for the preceding chorus}%
3515 {Song \thesongnum\space might have a \protect\beginchorus%
3516 \space with no matching \protect\endchorus.}%
3517 }
```

\SB@errbct

```
3518 \newcommand\SB@errbct{%
3519 \SB@Error{Encountered \protect\beginchorus\space without see%
3520 ing a \protect\beginsong\space line first}{After son%
3521 g \thesongnum\space there is a \protect\beginchorus\space%
3522 line outside of any song.}%
3523 }
```

\SB@errecv

```
3524 \newcommand\SB@errecv{%
3525 \SB@Error{Encountered an \protect\endchorus\space while proc%
3526 essing a verse}{Song \thesongnum\space might hav%
3527 e a \protect\beginverse\space concluded by \protect\endchorus%
3528 \space instead of \protect\endverse.}%
3529 }
```

\SB@erreco

```
3530 \newcommand\SB@erreco{%
3531 \SB@Error{Encountered \protect\endchorus\space without firs%
3532 t seeing a \protect\beginchorus}{Song \thesongnum\space m%
3533 ight have an \protect\endchorus\space with no match%
3534 ing \protect\beginchorus.}%
3535 }
```

\SB@errect

```
3536 \newcommand\SB@errect{%
3537 \SB@Error{Encountered an \protect\endchorus\space outside o%
3538 f any song}{Before song \thesongnum, there is a%
3539 n \protect\endchorus\space line not preceded b%
3540 y a \protect\beginsong\space line.}%
3541 }
```

\SB@errbro

```
3542 \newcommand\SB@errbro{%
3543   \SB@Error{Missing \protect\endsong}%
3544   {Nested song and intersong environments are not supported%
3545     . Song \thesongnum\space might be missing a%
3546     n \protect\endsong\space line.}%
3547 }
```

\SB@errbrr

```
3548 \newcommand\SB@errbrr{%
3549   \SB@Error{Nested intersong environments are not supported}%
3550   {A scripture quote or other intersong environment before s%
3551     ong \thesongnum\space is missing its ending line.}%
3552 }
```

\SB@errero

```
3553 \newcommand\SB@errero{%
3554   \SB@Error{Encountered an \protect\endscripture\space while%
3555     processing a song}{Song \thesongnum\space ends with%
3556     h \protect\endscripture\space when it should end with%
3557     h \protect\endsong.}%
3558 }
```

\SB@errert

```
3559 \newcommand\SB@errert{%
3560   \SB@Error{Encountered an \protect\endscripture\space with%
3561     out first seeing a \protect\beginscripture}{Before song%
3562     g \thesongnum, there is an \protect\endscripture\space w%
3563     ith no matching \protect\beginscripture.}%
3564 }
```

\SB@errscrip

```
3565 \newcommand\SB@errscrip[1]{%
3566   \SB@Error{Encountered a \protect#1\space outside a scriptu%
3567     re quote}{\protect#1\space can only appear between%
3568     n \protect\beginscripture\space and%
3569     d \protect\endscripture\space lines.}%
3570 }
```

\SB@errchord

```
3571 \newcommand\SB@errchord{%
3572   \SB@Error{Song \thesongnum\space seems to have chord%
3573     s that appear outside of any verse or chorus}{All chords a%
3574     nd lyrics should appear between \protect\beginverse\space%
3575     and \protect\endverse, or between \protect\beginchorus\space%
3576     and \protect\endchorus.}%
3577 }
```



```

\SB@errreplay
3578 \newcommand\SB@errreplay{%
3579 \SB@Error{Replayed chord has no matching chord}{Son%
3580 g \thesongnum\space uses \protect^ more times than the%
3581 re are chords in the previously memorized verse.}%
3582 }

\SB@errreg
3583 \newcommand\SB@errreg[1]{%
3584 \SB@Error{Unknown chord-replay register name: #1}{Chord-re%
3585 play registers must be declared with \protect\newchords.}%
3586 }

\SB@errdup
3587 \newcommand\SB@errdup[1]{%
3588 \SB@Error{Duplicate definition of chord-replay register%
3589 : #1}{\protect\newchords\space was used to declare the sa%
3590 me chord-replay register twice.}%
3591 }

\SB@errmbar
3592 \newcommand\SB@errmbar{%
3593 \SB@Error{Song \thesongnum\space seems to have measur%
3594 e bars that appear outside of any verse or chorus}{All mea%
3595 sure bars (produced with \protect\mbar\space or |) must ap%
3596 pear between \protect\beginverse\space an%
3597 d \protect\endverse, or between \protect\beginchorus\space%
3598 and \protect\endchorus.}%
3599 }

\SB@errtab
3600 \newcommand\SB@errtab{%
3601 \SB@Error{Invalid argument to \protect\gtab\space macro. R%
3602 eplacing it with \protect\0.}{Valid arguments consist onl%
3603 y of: X, 0, 0, 1, 2, 3, or 4.}%
3604 }

\SB@errnoidx
3605 \newcommand\SB@errnoidx[1]{%
3606 \SB@Error{Unknown index identifier: #1}{This index identifie%
3607 r was never declared using \protect\newindex.}%
3608 }

\SB@erridx
3609 \newcommand\SB@erridx[1]{%
3610 \SB@Error{\protect\idxaltentry\space not allowed in #1 index}%
3611 {This error should not occur. The index generation routines ha%
3612 ve malfunctioned. Try deleting all temporary files and then re%
3613 compiling.}%
3614 }

```

16.17 Option Processing

`\ifchorded` Reserve conditionals for all of the various option settings. We wait to define these since if any are used earlier than this, it is an error in the package code, and we'd rather get an error than continue.

```

\ifmeasures 3615 \newif\ifchorded
\ifpartiallist 3616 \newif\iflyric\lyrictrue
\ifrepchorus 3617 \newif\ifslides
\iftranscapos 3618 \newif\ifmeasures
\ifnolyrics 3619 \newif\ifpartiallist
\ifrawtext 3620 \newif\ifrepchorus
\ifsongindexes 3621 \newif\iftranscapos
\ifsepindexes 3622 \newif\ifnolyrics
\ifpagepreludes 3623 \newif\ifrawtext
\ifSB@colorboxes 3624 \newif\ifsongindexes\songindexestru
\ifSB@omitscrip 3625 \newif\ifsepindexes\sepindexestru
3626 \newif\ifpagepreludes
3627 \newif\ifSB@colorboxes\SB@colorboxestru
3628 \newif\ifSB@omitscrip

```

`\nolyrics` The `\nolyrics` and `\pagepreludes` macros are just shorthand for `\nolyricstrue` and `\pagepreludestrue`, respectively.

```

3629 \newcommand\nolyrics{}
3630 \let\nolyrics\nolyricstrue
3631 \newcommand\pagepreludes{}
3632 \let\pagepreludes\pagepreludestrue

```

Finally we're ready to process all of the package options. This is delayed until near the end because the option processing code needs to execute various macros found in the previous sections.

```

3633 \SB@chordson
3634 \ProcessOptions\relax

```

`\SB@colorbox` Include the colors package and define colors, if requested.

```

3635 \ifSB@colorboxes
3636   \RequirePackage{color}
3637   \definecolor{SongbookShade}{gray}{.80}
3638   \newcommand\SB@colorbox[2]{%
3639     \ifx\@empty#1%
3640       \vbox{%
3641         \kern3\p@%
3642         \hbox{\kern3\p@{#2}\kern3\p@}%
3643         \kern3\p@%
3644       }%
3645     \else%
3646       \colorbox{#1}{#2}%
3647     \fi%
3648   }
3649 \else

```

```

3650 \newcommand\SB@colorbox[2]{\vbox{%
3651   \kern3\p@%
3652   \hbox{\kern3\p@{#2}\kern3\p@}%
3653   \kern3\p@%
3654 }}
3655 \fi

```

16.18 Rawtext Mode

If generating raw text, most of what has been defined previously is ignored in favor of some very specialized macros that write all the song lyrics to a text file.

```

3656 \ifrawtext
3657   \newwrite\SB@txtout
3658   \immediate\openout\SB@txtout=\jobname.txt
3659   \newif\ifSB@doEOL
3660   {\catcode'\^M12 %
3661    \catcode'\^J12 %
3662    \gdef\SB@printEOL{\ifSB@doEOL\^M\^J\fi}}
3663   {\catcode'#12\gdef\SB@hash{#}}
3664   {\catcode'&12\gdef\SB@amp{&}}
3665   \renewcommand\SB@@@beginsong{%
3666     \begingroup%
3667     \def\'{}\def\'{}\def\v{}\def\u{}\def\={}\def\^{}\%
3668     \def\.\{}\def\H{}\def\~{}\def\"{}\def\t{}\%
3669     \def\copyright{(c)}%
3670     \let~\space%
3671     \let\par\SB@printEOL%
3672     \let#\SB@hash%
3673     \let&\SB@amp%
3674     \catcode'|9 %
3675     \catcode'*9 %
3676     \catcode'^9 %
3677     \def\[##1]{}%
3678     \resettitles%
3679     \immediate\write\SB@txtout{\thesongnum. \songtitle}%
3680     \nexttitle%
3681     \foreachtitle{\immediate\write\SB@txtout{(\songtitle)}}%
3682     \ifx\songauthors\@empty\else%
3683       \immediate\write\SB@txtout{\songauthors}%
3684     \fi%
3685     \ifx\SB@rawrefs\@empty\else%
3686       \immediate\write\SB@txtout{\SB@rawrefs}%
3687     \fi%
3688     \immediate\write\SB@txtout{}%
3689     \SB@doEOLfalse%
3690     \obeylines%
3691   }
3692   \renewcommand\SB@endssong{%
3693     \SB@doEOLtrue%

```

```

3694     \immediate\write\SB@txtout{\songcopyright\space%
3695     \songlicense\SB@printEOL}%
3696   \endgroup%
3697   \SB@insongfalse%
3698   \stepcounter{songnum}%
3699 }
3700 \def\SB@parsesrefs#1{\def\songrefs{#1}}
3701 \long\def\beginverse#1#2\endverse{%
3702   \SB@doEOLtrue\beginingroup%
3703   \def\textnote##1{##1}%
3704   \def\SB@temp{#1}%
3705   \def\SB@star{*}%
3706   \ifx\SB@temp\SB@star%
3707     \immediate\write\SB@txtout{\@gobble#2}%
3708   \else%
3709     \immediate\write\SB@txtout{#2}%
3710   \fi%
3711   \endgroup\SB@doEOLfalse}
3712 \long\def\beginchorus#1\endchorus{%
3713   \SB@doEOLtrue\beginingroup%
3714   \def\textnote##1{##1}%
3715   \immediate\write\SB@txtout{Chorus:#1}%
3716   \endgroup\SB@doEOLfalse}
3717 \long\def\beginscripture#1\endscripture{}
3718 \def\musicnote#1{}
3719 \def\textnote#1{%
3720   \SB@doEOLtrue%
3721   \immediate\write\SB@txtout{#1\SB@printEOL}%
3722   \SB@doEOLfalse}
3723 \def\brk{}
3724 \def\rep#1{(x#1)}
3725 \def\echo#1{(#1)}
3726 \def\mbar#1#2{}
3727 \def\lrep{}
3728 \def\rrep{}
3729 \def\nolyrics{}
3730 \renewcommand\memorize[1] [] {}
3731 \renewcommand\replay[1] [] {}
3732 \fi

```

16.19 Codeline Index

Numbers underlined refer to the code line where the corresponding entry is defined; numbers in roman refer to the code lines where the entry is used.

Symbols	&	3673	\.	2172, 2964, 2975, 3668
\"	2169, 3668	\'	2167, 3667	\/ 1691, 1697, 2193, 2570
\#	2578, 3672	\,	1071	\; 1071
\%	3000, 3084	\-	2194	\= 2171, 3667

<code>\@centercr</code>	1194	<code>\active</code>	1055, 1058, 1065, 1653, 1654, 2039, 2200, 2203, 2205, 2621– 2624, 2630, 2631, 2963	<code>\brkpenalty</code>	<u>107</u> , 1424, 1432, 1437, 1442
<code>\@currentlabel</code> 790, 1237				C	
<code>\@flushglue</code>	57, 60, 129, 144, 285, 523, 597, 694, 695, 786, 819, 1591	<code>\AE</code>	2183	<code>\c</code>	2177
<code>\@ifnextchar</code>	766, 769, 2646, 2657, 3048, 3057	<code>\ae</code>	2182	<code>\c@page</code> 428, 441, 522, 612	
<code>\@ifstar</code>		<code>\afterpreludeskip</code>		<code>\c@section</code>	829, 3017
.. 694, 698, 701, 1213		.. . . . .	<u>83</u> , 834	<code>\capo</code>	<u>1757</u>
<code>\@ixpt</code>	2589, 2590	<code>\alphascale</code>	<u>1744</u>	<code>\catcode</code>	1055, 1058, 1065, 1653, 1654, 2039, 2040, 2200, 2203–2205, 2347, 2621–2624, 2630, 2631, 2782, 2963, 2964, 3000, 3084, 3660, 3661, 3663, 3664, 3674–3676
<code>\@onlypreamble</code>	2952, 2954, 2956, 3089–3092	<code>\arabic</code>	67, 70	<code>\cbarwidth</code> . . . . .	. <u>102</u> , 145, 1172, 1371, 1372, 1377, 1386, 1422
<code>\@par</code>	1163	<code>\AtBeginDocument</code>	287	<code>\ccpenalty</code> <u>107</u> , 282, 1124	
<code>\@sanitize</code>	1495	<code>\AtEndDocument</code>	3007	<code>\centering</code>	155, 912, 931, 2885, 2893
<code>\@secntformat</code>		<code>\authbyword</code>	<u>3064</u>	<code>\ch</code>	2251, 2327, <u>2604</u>
..	2880, 2881, 2884, 2888, 2889, 2892	<code>\authignoreword</code>	<u>3064</u>	<code>\chapter</code>	3217, 3218
<code>\@sptoken</code>	993, 1037, 1801, 2284, 2500	<code>\authseppword</code>	<u>3064</u>	<code>\CheckCommand</code>	1193
<code>\@startsection</code>		B		chorded (option)	<u>175</u>
..	2882, 2890	<code>\b</code>	2179	<code>\chordedfalse</code> 197, 1481	
<code>\@viipt</code>	2588, 2589	<code>\badness</code>		<code>\chordedtrue</code>	183, 1481
<code>\@vipt</code> 2587, 2588, 2716		1398, 1404, 1410, 3174		<code>\chordlocals</code>	<u>80</u> , 2207
<code>\@vpt</code>	2586, 2587, 2737	<code>\baselineadj</code>	<u>87</u> , 877	<code>\chordsoff</code>	<u>175</u>
<code>\@vpt</code>	2585	<code>\baselineskip</code> 55, 90, 91, 865, 868, 869, 872, 875, 877, 964, 1246, 1252, 1335, 1594, 1595, 1972, 2007, 2014, 2022, 3191		<code>\chordson</code>	<u>175</u> , 3419
<code>\@xipt</code> 2592, 2593, 2733		<code>\Bcolon</code>	<u>1622</u>	chorus (environment) <u>1302</u>	
<code>\@xipt</code>	2591, 2592	<code>\beforepostludeskip</code>		<code>\chorusfont</code> <u>41</u> , 136, 1340	
<code>\@xivpt</code>	2593, 2594	.. . . . .	<u>83</u> , 683, 841	<code>\chorusjustify</code> . . . . .	.. . . . . <u>52</u> , 138, 1340
<code>\@xvipt</code>	2594, 2595	<code>\beginchorus</code>	1302, 3447, 3484, 3506, 3513, 3515, 3519, 3521, 3532, 3534, 3575, 3597, 3712	<code>\chorusmark</code> . . . . .	.. . . . . <u>113</u> , 1315, 1321
<code>\@xxpt</code>	2595, 2596	<code>\beginscripture</code> . . . . .		<code>\clearpage</code> . . . . .	.. 609, 611, 2910, 3270
<code>\@xxvpt</code>	2596	1583, 1627, 1639, 1645, 3561, 3563, 3568, 3717		<code>\clineparams</code>	<u>89</u> , 2533
<code>\[</code>	2206, 2249, 2459, 2460, 2467, 2468, 2608, 2615, 2632, 3677	<code>\beginsong</code> . . . . .	.. . . . . <u>757</u> , 1221, 1308, 3426, 3432, 3459, 3461, 3477, 3497, 3520, 3540	<code>\closeout</code>	2995, 3002
<code>\</code>	705, 707, 789, 982, 984, 998, 1000, 1194, 2064, 2642, 2654, 2965, 2976, 3116, 3237, 3277	<code>\beginverse</code>	<u>1204</u> , 3441, 3464, 3470, 3476, 3478, 3489, 3491, 3509, 3527, 3574, 3596, 3701	<code>\colbotglue</code>	<u>126</u> , 144, 192, 206, 285, 420, 598, 1133, 1142, 1446
<code>\^</code>	2168, 2200, 2205, 3660, 3661, 3667	<code>\bfseries</code>	71, 118, 122, 124, 968, 2885, 2893	<code>\colorbox</code>	3646
<code>\‘</code>	2166, 3667	<code>\break</code>	360, 388, 395, 402, 607, 608, 3304	<code>\columnsep</code>	248, 250, 341, 3212, 3213, 3286
<code>\~</code> 2170, 2963, 2974, 3668		<code>\brk</code>	<u>1417</u> , 3723	<code>\commitsongs</code>	<u>593</u> , 2908
<code>_</code>	72, 117, 2331			<code>\copyright</code>	3669
A				<code>\cvpenalty</code> <u>107</u> , 284, 1122	
<code>\AA</code>	2185				
<code>\aa</code>	2184				
<code>\Acolon</code>	<u>1622</u>				

D	
<code>\d</code>	2178
<code>\DeclareFlatSize</code> .	<u>2582</u>
<code>\DeclareLyricChar</code>	<u>2103</u> , 2166–2195
<code>\DeclareNoHyphen</code>	<u>2103</u> , 2196
<code>\DeclareNonLyric</code> .	<u>2103</u>
<code>\DeclareOption</code> 132, 163–	166, 169, 175, 176, 209,
	210, 235, 236, 239, 240
<code>\define@key</code>	748
<code>\definecolor</code>	3637
<code>\discretionary</code>	2195
E	
<code>\echo</code>	<u>1494</u> , 3725
<code>\emergencystretch</code>	1596
<code>\endchorus</code>	805,
	1219, 1273, 1306, 1311,
	3446, 3448, 3471, 3473,
	3485, 3514, 3516, 3525,
	3527, 3531, 3533, 3537,
	3539, 3576, 3598, 3712
<code>\endendverse</code>	3467
<code>\endgraf</code>	1169, 1634
<code>\endlinechar</code>	1500
<code>\endscripture</code>	
	. . . . . 1588, 3433, 3436,
	3452, 3455, 3554, 3556,
	3560, 3562, 3569, 3717
<code>\endsong</code>	
	762, 1230, 1270, 1311,
	1351, 3427, 3429, 3439,
	3445, 3451, 3454, 3458,
	3460, 3543, 3546, 3557
<code>\endverse</code>	
	804, 1218, 1230, 1305,
	1364, 3440, 3442, 3465,
	3482, 3485, 3488, 3490,
	3494, 3496, 3507, 3510,
	3528, 3575, 3597, 3701
<code>\enskip</code>	1096, 1110
<code>\ensuremath</code>	2578
environments:	
<code>chorus</code>	<u>1302</u>
<code>idxblock</code>	<u>3183</u>
<code>intersong</code>	<u>1530</u>
<code>SB@lgidx</code>	<u>3186</u>
<code>SB@smidx</code>	<u>3186</u>
<code>scripture</code>	<u>1583</u>
<code>song</code>	<u>757</u>
<code>songgroup</code>	<u>1519</u>
<code>songs</code>	<u>2895</u>
<code>verse</code>	<u>1204</u>
<code>verse*</code>	<u>1204</u>
<code>\escapechar</code>	2096
<code>\eTeXversion</code>	2, 3
<code>\everychorus</code>	<u>77</u> , 1328
<code>\everypar</code>	
	. . . . . 1256, 1338, 1480
<code>\everyverse</code>	<u>77</u> , 1261
<code>\exhyphenpenalty</code>	
	. . . . . 2561, 3193
<code>\extendpostlude</code>	<u>116</u> , 965
<code>\extendprelude</code>	
	. . . . . <u>116</u> , 912, 939
F	
<code>\f@baselineskip</code>	2600
<code>\f@size</code> 90, 864, 886, 1594,	2575, 2598, 2600, 3191
<code>\finalhyphendemerits</code>	1616
<code>\flat</code>	2579
<code>\flatsymbol</code>	<u>2578</u> , 2581
<code>\flt</code>	867, 888, 1838,
	1887–1891, <u>2580</u> , 2625
<code>\fontencoding</code>	
	1516, 2714, 2723, 2731
<code>\fontfamily</code>	
	1516, 2714, 2723, 2731
<code>\fontseries</code>	
	. . . . . 2715, 2724, 2732
<code>\fontshape</code>	
	. . . . . 2715, 2724, 2732
<code>\fontsize</code>	2599, 2690,
	2716, 2725, 2733, 2737
<code>\foreachtitle</code>	
	. . . . . <u>727</u> , 797, 936, 3681
G	
<code>\gtab</code>	<u>2778</u> , 2791, 3601
<code>\gtabtrans</code>	2792, <u>2796</u>
H	
<code>\H</code>	2175, 3668
<code>\hangafter</code>	158
<code>\hangindent</code>	158
<code>\hbadness</code>	
	. . . . . 3121, 3137, 3145
<code>\hfuzz</code>	3121, 3137, 3145
<code>\hphantom</code>	2460, 2608
<code>\hrule</code>	687, 824, 1539
<code>\hsize</code> 784, 816, 824, 836,	847, 904, 908, 911, 929,
	1455, 1457–1459, 1537,
	1539, 1548, 2813, 2821,
	2822, 2824, 2829, 2831,
	3106, 3109, 3134, 3165,
	3189, 3197, 3211, 3231,
	3262, 3267, 3364, 3371
<code>\Huge</code>	39
<code>\huge</code>	135
<code>\hyperlink</code>	2924–2926
<code>\hypertarget</code>	2918–2920
<code>\hyphenchar</code>	2543
<code>\hyphenpenalty</code>	
	. . . . . 2562, 3193
I	
<code>\i</code>	2191
<code>\idxaltentry</code>	<u>3184</u> ,
	3348, 3386, 3396, 3610
<code>\idxauthfont</code>	<u>122</u> , 3393
<code>\idxbgcolor</code>	<u>49</u> , 3335
<code>idxblock</code> (environment)	<u>3183</u>
<code>\idxbook</code>	<u>124</u> , 3371
<code>\idxcont</code>	<u>125</u> , 3364
<code>\idxentry</code>	<u>3184</u> , 3344, 3380, 3392
<code>\idxheadfont</code>	<u>118</u> , 3336
<code>\idxheadwidth</code> . . . . .	. . . . . <u>96</u> , 3333, 3336
<code>\idxlyricfont</code>	<u>120</u> , 3349
<code>\idxrefsfont</code>	<u>123</u> ,
	3346, 3350, 3382, 3394
<code>\idxscripfont</code>	<u>121</u> , 3381
<code>\idxtitlefont</code>	<u>119</u> , 3345
<code>\if@filesw</code>	2943
<code>\if@twoside</code>	
	441, 447, 452, 465, 522
<code>\ifchorded</code>	216, 227,
	866, 887, 1246, 1252,
	1333, 1381, 1387, 1481,
	1493, 2006, 2630, <u>3615</u>
<code>\IfFileExists</code>	5, 3224
<code>\iflyric</code>	<u>3615</u>

<code>\ifmeasures</code>	188, 202, 2420, 2631, <u>3615</u>
<code>\ifnolyrics</code>	2528, <u>3615</u>
<code>\ifpagepreludes</code> 816, 823, 838, 854, 928, 931, <u>3615</u>	
<code>\ifpartiallist</code>	577, 594, 695, 698, 701, 1446, <u>3615</u>
<code>\ifrawtext</code>	180, <u>3615</u> , 3656
<code>\ifrepchorus</code>	254, 315, 563, 808, 1223, 1316, 1331, 1356, 1423, 1427, <u>3615</u>
<code>\ifSB@brokenword</code>	2029, 2534, 2562
<code>\ifSB@chordedspec</code>	142, <u>173</u>
<code>\ifSB@chorustop</code>	<u>1279</u> , 1381, 1387
<code>\ifSB@colorboxes</code>	<u>3615</u> , 3635
<code>\ifSB@convertnotes</code>	<u>1704</u> , 1764, 1771
<code>\ifSB@doEOL</code>	3659, 3662
<code>\ifSB@etex</code>	1, 271, 1282, 1494
<code>\ifSB@firstchord</code>	2055, 2214, 2218
<code>\ifSB@gettabind</code>	<u>2739</u> , 2814, 2823
<code>\ifSB@gotchorus</code>	<u>1281</u> , 1317, 1356, 1427
<code>\ifSB@inchorus</code>	222, 233, <u>732</u> , 805, 1171, 1219, 1273, 1306, 1347, 1371, 1421, 1473, 1487, 1938, 2498
<code>\ifSB@insong</code>	<u>732</u> , 759, 803, 1217, 1264, 1304, 1346, 1418, 1531, 1558, 1562, 1580
<code>\ifSB@intersong</code>	<u>732</u> , 760, 859, 1532, 1543, 1563, 1569, 1599, 1607, 1625, 1638, 1644
<code>\ifSB@inverse</code>	150, 221, 232, <u>732</u> , 804, 1121, 1218, 1265, 1305, 1364, 1471, 1485, 1937, 2498
<code>\ifSB@measurespec</code>	<u>173</u> , 187, 201
<code>\ifSB@needkey</code>	<u>1748</u> , 1877
<code>\ifSB@nohat</code>	2063, <u>2684</u>
<code>\ifSB@omitscrip</code>	1551, 1571, <u>3615</u>
<code>\ifSB@pdf</code>	8, 2915
<code>\ifSB@preamble</code>	<u>16</u> , 142, 192, 206, 244
<code>\ifSB@prefshrps</code>	<u>1747</u> , 1880
<code>\ifSB@prevverse</code>	809, 1122, 1124, <u>1192</u> , 1225, 1317
<code>\ifSB@songsenv</code>	261, 732, 2896
<code>\ifSB@stanza</code>	<u>1116</u> , 1119, 1475, 1489
<code>\ifSB@test</code>	<u>18</u> , 514, 2267, 2297, 2308, 2349, 2370, 2446, 2508, 2529
<code>\ifSB@trackch</code>	2046, 2063, 2635
<code>\ifSB@wordends</code>	<u>2029</u> , 2514, 2557
<code>\ifsepindexes</code>	3225, 3257, 3270, <u>3615</u>
<code>\ifslides</code>	39, 871, 891, 903, <u>3615</u>
<code>\ifsongindexes</code>	2996, 3210, <u>3615</u>
<code>\iftranscapos</code>	1758, <u>3615</u>
<code>\ifvnumbered</code>	809, 1191, 1225, 1236, 1271
<code>\includeonlysongs</code>	<u>259</u> , 3410, 3411
<code>\indexentry</code>	755, <u>3048</u>
<code>\indexesoff</code>	164, <u>166</u>
<code>\indexeson</code>	<u>166</u>
<code>\indexsongsas</code>	<u>3059</u>
<code>\indextitleentry</code>	756, <u>3056</u>
<code>\input</code>	3001, 3238, 3279
<code>\interlinepenalty</code>	106, 1167, 1168, 1170, 1179, 1180, 3171
<code>intersong</code> (environment)	<u>1530</u>
<code>\item</code>	1202
<code>\itemindent</code>	1197, 1198
<code>\itemsep</code>	1196
J	
<code>\j</code>	2192
<code>\jobname</code>	2946, 3001, 3658
<code>\justifycenter</code>	137, 139, <u>154</u>
<code>\justifyleft</code>	52, 53, <u>148</u>
L	
<code>\L</code>	2189
<code>\l</code>	2188
<code>\LARGE</code>	71, 118, 2885, 2893
<code>\Large</code>	39
<code>\large</code>	79
<code>\lastbox</code>	324, 675, 678, 1610, 1942, 3125
<code>\lastcolglue</code>	<u>128</u> , 517
<code>\lastpenalty</code>	401, 1470
<code>\lastskip</code>	1138, 1546, 1941, 2517
<code>\leaders</code>	1386, 3103, 3172
<code>\leftmargin</code>	1199, 1200
<code>\leftskip</code>	56, 60, 74, 149, 150, 155, 157, 785, 818, 1372, 1373, 1453, 1458, 1592, 1611, 1632, 1648, 3120, 3170
<code>\lineskip</code>	93, 932, 3192
<code>\lineskiplimit</code>	92, 3192
<code>\list</code>	1195
<code>\listparindent</code>	1198
<code>\lq</code>	1680, 1693
<code>\lrep</code>	<u>2013</u> , 3727
<code>lyric</code> (option)	<u>175</u>
<code>\lyricfalse</code>	183
<code>\lyricfont</code>	<u>37</u> , 72, 135, 799, 885, 1152, 2460
<code>\lyrictrue</code>	197, 3616
M	
<code>\m@th</code>	2571
<code>\makeatletter</code>	3000
<code>\makepostlude</code>	843, <u>963</u>
<code>\makeprelude</code>	832, <u>901</u>
<code>\mark</code>	331, 1979, 3375, 3384
<code>\marks</code>	681, 810, 1226, 1331, 1423
<code>\maxdepth</code>	301, 3199, 3245

`\mbar` 2000,
 2002, 2325, 3595, 3726
`\mch` ... 2252, 2329, 2610
`\meaning` ... 2070, 2088,
 2135, 2136, 2139, 2506
`\measurebar`
 ... 2001, 2323, 2465–
 2468, 2612, 2615, 2627
`\measuresfalse` 225
`\measuresoff` 209
`\measureson` 209
`\measurestrue` 214
`\memorize`
 1234, 2645, 3730
`\meter` .. 793, 1934, 1998
`\minfrets` ... 130, 2837
`\MultiwordChords` . 2231
`\musicnote`
 1493, 1758, 3718

N

`\newauthorindex` .. 2955
`\newbox` 28–30, 35,
 292, 295–297, 558, 564,
 1280, 2034, 2035, 3008
`\newchords`
 2639, 3585, 3589
`\newcount` 32, 33,
 107–112, 130, 293, 294,
 552, 1529, 1703, 2032
`\newcounter` 63, 64, 2913
`\newdimen`
 24–27, 131, 1184, 2740
`\newenvironment`
 757, 1207, 1302,
 1519, 1530, 1561, 1583,
 2895, 3183, 3186, 3187
`\newif` 1, 8, 16, 18,
 173, 174, 732–736, 1116,
 1191, 1192, 1279, 1281,
 1704, 1747, 1748, 2029,
 2030, 2214, 2635, 2684,
 2739, 3615–3628, 3659
`\newindex` .. 2951, 3607
`\newlength` 96,
 98, 100, 102, 104, 2687
`\newmark` ... 1288, 1289
`\newmarks` .. 1292, 1293
`\newpage` 612
`\newscripindex` ... 2953

`\newskip` 34, 81, 83, 85, 87
`\newsongkey`
 ... 744, 750, 752–756
`\newtoks`
 ... 31, 712, 713, 2031,
 2033, 2636, 2637, 2641
`\newwrite` .. 2945, 3657
`\nextcol` 693
`\nexttitle` 717,
 719, 729, 796, 935, 3680
`\nobreakspace` 2213
`\noindexes` (option) .. 166
`\nolyrics` .. 3629, 3729
`\nolyricstrue` 3630
`\nomeasures` (option) . 209
`\nonfrenchspacing` 1071
`\nopdfindex` (option) . 169
`\norepchoruses` 271
`\normalfont`
 ... 37, 123, 135, 2807
`\normalsize` 37, 123, 2807
`\noscripture` (option) 236
`\noshading` (option) .. 165
`\nosongnumbers` 266
`\notebgcolor` .. 49, 1482
`\notefont` 41, 1450
`\notejustify` .. 54, 1460
`\notenameA`
 1705, 1720, 1862
`\notenameB`
 1705, 1721, 1863
`\notenameC`
 1705, 1722, 1864
`\notenameD`
 1705, 1723, 1865
`\notenameE`
 1705, 1724, 1866
`\notenameF`
 1705, 1725, 1867
`\notenameG`
 1705, 1726, 1868
`\notenames`
 1739, 1744, 1745
`\notenamesin` 1719, 1740
`\notenamesout` 1729, 1741
`\notrans` 1782
`\noversenumbers` ... 267

O

`\o` 2186
`\obeylines`
 1162, 1635, 3690
`\obeyspaces` . 1061, 1065
`\OE` 2181
`\oe` 2180
`\onesongcolumn` 141, 239
`onesongcolumn` (option) .
 239
`\openout` 2946, 2998, 3658
options:
 chorded 175
 lyric 175
 noindexes 166
 nomeasures 209
 nopdfindex 169
 noscripture 236
 noshading 165
 onesongcolumn .. 239
 rawtext 164
 showmeasures ... 209
 slides 132
 transposecapos . 235
 twosongcolumns . 239
 unouter 162
`\outer` .. 162, 2075, 2080

P

`\p@songnum` 790
`\p@versenum` 1237
`\PackageError` 3399
`\PackageWarning` .. 3400
`\pagepreludes` 3629
`\pagepreludetrue` 3632
`\pagetotal`
 ... 354, 413, 2902, 3299
`\parfillskip` .. 57, 786,
 819, 1591, 1616, 3190
`\parindent`
 .. 57, 74, 95, 149, 152,
 157, 819, 964, 1187,
 1189, 1590, 1633, 3190
`\parskip` . 786, 819, 911,
 938, 964, 1591, 3190
`\partiallisttrue` .. 262
`\pdfbookmark` . 2915–2917
`\pdfoutput` 9–11
`\placene` 59, 139, 1482
`\placeversenum`
 73, 156, 1247
`\preferflats` 1760

<code>\prefersharp</code>	1760	S	<code>\SB@allindexes</code>	2932,
<code>\printchord</code>	79, 867, 888, 2054, 2809	<code>\SB@@@beginsong</code>	2940, 2941, 2997, 3066	
<code>\printnoteA</code>	1712,	.. 769, 777, <u>779</u> , 3665	<code>\SB@amp</code>	3664, 3673
1730, 1881, 1887, 1891		<code>\SB@@@ch</code>	<code>\SB@appendsp</code>	
<code>\printnoteB</code>	1712,	<code>\SB@@@gtab</code> . . . . .	. 979, 1014, 1802, 2415	
1731, 1882, 1887, 1888		.... 2788, 2791, <u>2797</u>	<code>\SB@atopfret</code>	2696,
<code>\printnoteC</code>	1712, 1732, 1882, 1888	<code>\SB@@@mch</code>	2710, 2711, 2720, 2737	
<code>\printnoteD</code>	1712,	<code>\SB@@beginchorus</code>	<code>\SB@balancerows</code>	
1733, 1883, 1888, 1889		.... 1327, <u>1330</u> , 1439	..... 3107, <u>3113</u>	
<code>\printnoteE</code>	1712, 1734, 1883, 1889	<code>\SB@@beginsong</code>	<code>\SB@begincname</code>	2198,
<code>\printnoteF</code>	1712, 1735, 1884, 1890	<code>\SB@@bskvfmt</code>	2199, 2606, 2613, 2778	
<code>\printnoteG</code>	1736, 1884, 1885, 1890	<code>\SB@@ch</code>	<code>\SB@beginverse</code>	1205,
<code>\printsccite</code>	48, 1587	<code>\SB@@chmacro</code> 2316, <u>2318</u>	1208, 1213, 1214, <u>1216</u>	
<code>\printsongnum</code>	71, 99, 920, 951	<code>\SB@@chord</code> . 2198, <u>2215</u>	<code>\SB@box</code>	24, 309,
<code>\printversenum</code>	72, 101, 268, 1240	<code>\SB@@csify</code>	321, 324, 346, 349, 641,	
<code>\ProcessOptions</code>	3634	<code>\SB@@echo</code>	642, 652, 653, 662, 664,	
<code>\protected@edef</code>	790, 1237, 3010	<code>\SB@@gtab</code>	675, 678, 684, 867, 868,	
<code>\protected@write</code>	2959	<code>\SB@@idxcmd</code>	888, 889, 924, 944, 947,	
R		<code>\SB@@idxentry</code> <u>3048</u> , 3057	949, 955, 959, 968, 969,	
<code>\raggedright</code>	1188	<code>\SB@clap</code>	972, 973, 1152–1154,	
<code>rawtext</code> (option)	164	<code>\SB@mch</code>	1157, 1235, 1239, 1242–	
<code>\rawtexttrue</code>	164	<code>\SB@par</code>	1244, 1247, 1268, 1332,	
<code>\rep</code>	1514, 3724	<code>\SB@prspace</code>	1352–1354, 1359, 1362,	
<code>\repchoruses</code>	271, 3422, 3500	<code>\SB@prstep</code>	1397, 1409, 1430, 1431,	
<code>\repchorusfalse</code> 279, 629		<code>\SB@rechord</code> . 185, <u>2671</u>	1435, 1436, 1450, 1451,	
<code>\repchorustrue</code> 274, 631		<code>\SB@creplay</code>	1461, 1465, 1509, 1512,	
<code>\replay</code>	1234, 1326, <u>2657</u> , 3731	<code>\SB@selectcol</code>	1610, 1612, 1942–1944,	
<code>\RequirePackage</code>	5, 36, 3636	.. 407, 497, 500, 503	1946, 1962, 1964, 1965,	
<code>\resettitles</code>	715,	<code>\SB@@srcomma</code>	1974, 1975, 1982, 2808,	
794, 798, 828, 902, 3678		<code>\SB@@srcso</code>	2813, 2829, 3101, 3106,	
<code>\rightmargin</code>	1199	<code>\SB@@srdash</code>	3109, 3115, 3125–3127,	
<code>\rightskip</code> . 56, 60, 155,		<code>\SB@@srhyphen</code>	3133, 3136, 3148, 3158,	
785, 818, 1454, 1459,		<code>\SB@@srspace</code>	3196, 3200, 3201, 3204,	
1592, 1631, 3124, 3170		<code>\SB@@UTFtest</code>	3226, 3246, 3247, 3274,	
<code>\rmfamily</code>	120	<code>\SB@accidental</code>	3300, 3302, 3310, 3312	
<code>\rq</code>	1687, 1699	.... 2569, 2580, 2581	<code>\SB@boxii</code>	24,
<code>\rrep</code>	<u>2021</u> , 3728	<code>\SB@activehat</code>	414, 416, 430, 918, 926,	
		.... 2047, 2049, 2053,	944, 945, 1946, 1948,	
		2250, 2319, <u>2616</u> , 2628	1949, 1963, 1964, 1967,	
		<code>\SB@addDtest</code>	1976, 1977, 1988, 2811,	
		2110, 2112, 2114, <u>2133</u>	2815, 2819, 2833, 3143,	
		<code>\SB@addMtest</code> 2119, <u>2151</u>	3148, 3159, 3246, 3248,	
		<code>\SB@addNtest</code>	3300, 3306, 3310, 3316	
		.... 2108, 2117, <u>2142</u>	<code>\SB@boxiii</code>	24,
		<code>\SB@addtoindex</code>	423, 425, 435, 480, 481,	
		.... 3009, 3023, 3030	2812, 2820, 2835, 2836,	
		<code>\SB@addtoindexes</code>	3301, 3303, 3311, 3315	
		.... 795, <u>3021</u> , 3053	<code>\SB@boxup</code>	1449, 1482
		<code>\SB@addtotitles</code>	<code>\SB@bracket</code>	
		.... 797, <u>3027</u> , 3055	.. 184, 198, <u>2197</u> , 2632	

\SB@breakpoint	\SB@chmacro . 2278, <u>2306</u>	\SB@chtrymacro
. 371, 534, 1120, <u>1130</u> ,	\SB@chmain <u>2240</u>	. . . . . 2273, <u>2276</u>
1424, 1432, 1437, 1442	\SB@chmbar	\SB@clearbskeys <u>744</u> , 765
\SB@brokenwordfalse . . .	. . . . . 2324, 2326, <u>2419</u>	\SB@cleardpage
. 2511, 2522	\SB@chmstop <u>2355</u>	. . . . . <u>520</u> , 600, 701
\SB@brokenwordtrue	\SB@chmulti <u>2355</u>	\SB@clearlig
. 2514, 2524	\SB@chnorm	<u>2492</u> , 2531, 2546, 2554
\SB@bskvfmt . . . . .	. . . . . 2260, 2261, <u>2264</u>	\SB@clearpage . 244, <u>511</u> ,
. 766, 772, 774, 775	\SB@chnxtdone	521, 543, 599, 620, 698
\SB@bsoldfmt <u>757</u>	. . . . . 2235, 2236, <u>2245</u> ,	\SB@closeall . . <u>737</u> , 759,
\SB@cbarshift	2270, 2300, 2309, 2320,	760, 762, 859, 1230,
. 60, 151, 155, <u>1370</u>	2322, 2352, 2383, 2387,	1270, 1311, 1351, 1531,
\SB@ch . . . 186, 200, <u>2604</u>	2389, 2410, 2411, 2421	1532, 1535, 1558, 1562,
\SB@ch@off 200, 230, <u>2604</u>	\SB@chnxtrelax	1563, 1566, 1580, 1588
\SB@ch@on 186, 228, <u>2604</u>	. . . . . <u>2245</u> , 2249–2252	\SB@cmark
\SB@chbgroup 2287, <u>2426</u>	\SB@chnxtstep . . . . .	. . 646, 655, 1226, <u>1296</u>
\SB@chb@space . . . . .	. . . . . <u>2245</u> , 2253–2255,	\SB@cmarkclass
. 2393, 2394, <u>2397</u>	2268, 2294, 2298, 2303,	. . . . . 645, 654, 810,
\SB@chbstok	2350, 2381, 2406, 2423	1226, <u>1282</u> , 1331, 1423
. <u>2036</u> , 2404, 2484	\SB@chord 184, <u>2198</u> , 2679	\SB@cnt . . . <u>24</u> , 242, 243,
\SB@chdone 2234,	\SB@chordbox <u>2034</u> ,	246, 382, 389, 391, 396,
2247, 2377, 2392, 2408,	2043, 2044, 2224, 2403,	409, 418, 420, 439, 440,
2456, 2461, 2469, <u>2471</u>	2509, 2530, 2541, 2548	442, 462, 463, 477–479,
\SB@chegroup 2289, <u>2430</u>	\SB@chordedspectrue . . .	481, 482, 484, 485, 488,
\SB@chegrpdone . . . <u>2430</u>	. . . . . 177, 178	515–517, 1167, 1170,
\SB@chegrp@macro . . . <u>2430</u>	\SB@chordsoff . 142, <u>175</u>	1751–1754, 1836, 1839,
\SB@chegrp@name . . . <u>2430</u>	\SB@chordson . <u>175</u> , 3633	1842, 1845, 1855, 1861,
\SB@chegrp@outer . . . <u>2430</u>	\SB@chorusbar	1870, 1874–1876, 1881,
\SB@chegrp@scan . . . <u>2430</u>	1353, <u>1376</u> , 1430, 1435	1887, 1900, 2092–2094,
\SB@chend@space	\SB@chorusbox . 315, 563,	2100, 2106, 2337, 2346,
. 2237, <u>2390</u> , 2407	566, 574, 632, 666, 682,	2347, 2545, 2551, 2564,
\SB@chespace	781, 808, 1223, <u>1280</u> ,	2746, 2752, 2777, 2837,
. 2237, 2268, 2287,	1318, 1319, 1357, 1358,	2842, 2843, 2865, 2866,
2289, 2294, 2298, 2303,	1428, 1429, 1533, 1564	2868, 2971, 2974, 2975,
2328, 2330, 2338–2340,	\SB@chorustopfalse 1438	2977, 2978, 3147, 3174,
2350, <u>2390</u> , 2407, 2423	\SB@chorustoptrue 1312	3283, 3284, 3287, 3295,
\SB@chexpspace	\SB@chother . 2280, <u>2283</u>	3317, 3322, 3323, 3328
. 2236, 2285,	\SB@chothermac	\SB@cntii
<u>2386</u> , 2393, 2405, 2411	. . . . . 2337, <u>2343</u>	<u>24</u> , 415, 416, 424, 425,
\SB@chgetname 2311, <u>2314</u>	\SB@chscan . 2229, <u>2240</u> ,	429, 430, 434, 435, 438,
\SB@chgetspace . . . <u>2397</u>	2357, 2372, 2417, 2428	447, 450, 452, 459, 461,
\SB@chhyph . 2293, <u>2378</u>	\SB@chspc@done 2408, <u>2471</u>	467, 476, 2866, 2868
\SB@chimpspace	\SB@chstart . 2228, <u>2248</u>	\SB@colbox . . . 295, 296,
. 2235, 2332, 2334,	\SB@chstep . 2246, <u>2355</u>	355, 364, 368, 369,
<u>2386</u> , 2394, 2406, 2410	\SB@chstepfour	381, 383, 384, 513, 530
\SB@chkid@lst . . . . .	. . . . . 2340, <u>2355</u>	\SB@colnum . . . <u>293</u> , 342,
. 2898, <u>3033</u> , 3052	\SB@chstepthree	355, 356, 361, 415, 440,
\SB@chlig . . 2328, <u>2457</u>	. . . . . 2339, <u>2355</u>	463, 476, 477, 484, 516
\SB@chlyrdone	\SB@chsteptwo 2338, <u>2355</u>	\SB@colon
. 2234, 2392, <u>2471</u>		. . . . . 1622, 1623, <u>1624</u>

\SB@colorbox	918,	\SB@dimenii	24, 648, 656, 662, 1379,	\SB@endparse	985,
949, 1482, 3335, <u>3635</u>		1381, 1388, 1401, 1403,		997, <u>1018</u> , 1024, 1043	
\SB@colorboxesfalse 165		1405, 1407, 1410, 1411,		\SB@endscripture	
\SB@colorboxestrue 3627		1972–1977, 1994, 2824–		1583, <u>1598</u>	
\SB@colwidth		2827, 3133, 3166, 3167,		\SB@endsong	
. <u>131</u> , 248–252,		3169, 3172, 3296, 3306–		757, <u>802</u> , 3692	
340, 687, 784, 816, 836,		3308, 3317, 3359–3361		\SB@endverse	
1537, 3189, 3211–3214				1206, 1209, <u>1263</u>	
\SB@computess		\SB@dimeniii		\SB@envbox	
. 1383, 1384, <u>1393</u>		24, 649, 651, 657, 659,		35, 581, 820, 838,	
\SB@convertnotesfalse .		661, 3139, 3140, 3144,		1587, 1608, 1615, 3215,	
. 1742		3149, 3151, 3152, 3155		3229, 3260, 3266, 3290	
\SB@convertnotestrue . .		\SB@dimeniv		\SB@errbcc	1306, <u>3512</u>
. 1727, 1737		. . . . . <u>24</u> , 3140, 3142,		\SB@errbct	1308, <u>3518</u>
\SB@cr@ <u>789</u> , 1234, <u>2636</u>		3149, 3152, 3155, 3157		\SB@errbcv	1305, <u>3505</u>
\SB@creg 2064, <u>2638</u> , <u>2652</u> ,		\SB@displayindex		\SB@errboo	759, <u>3425</u>
2654, 2662, 2664, 2669		3209, 3352, 3387, 3397		\SB@errbor	760, <u>3431</u>
\SB@csify		\SB@doEOLfalse		\SB@errbro	
. <u>2744</u> , 2862, 2864,		3689, 3711, 3716, 3722		. . . . . 1531, 1562, <u>3542</u>	
2867, 2871, 2875, 2876		\SB@doEOLtrue		\SB@errbrr	
\SB@ctail 2050, 2637,		3693, 3702, 3713, 3720		. . . . . 1532, 1563, <u>3548</u>	
2664, 2669, 2673, 2678		\SB@dolq <u>1652</u>		\SB@errbvc	1219, <u>3469</u>
\SB@ctoken <u>2857</u>		\SB@donext <u>975</u> ,		\SB@errbvt	1221, <u>3475</u>
\SB@cwrite		994, 996, 999, 1002,		\SB@errbv v	1218, <u>3463</u>
. <u>2957</u> , 3014–3016		1004, 1006, 1038, 1040,		\SB@errchord 2498, <u>3571</u>	
\SB@declare <u>2103</u>		1042, 1044, 1046, 1048,		\SB@errdup	2643, <u>3587</u>
\SB@dimen <u>24</u> , 340–343,		1050, 1089, 1094, 1105,		\SB@erreco	1365, <u>3530</u>
345, 353–355, 368, 370,		1797, 1800, 1803, 1805,		\SB@errect	1367, <u>3536</u>
383, 386, 412, 413, 416,		1807, 1817, 1826, 1830,		\SB@errecev	1364, <u>3524</u>
481, 647, 649, 653, 656,		1834, 1837, 1840, 1843,		\SB@erreoc	805, <u>3444</u>
657, 659, 864, 865, 872,		1846, 1848, 2244–2247,		\SB@erreor	859, <u>3450</u>
873, 875, 880, 881, 886,		2287, 2289, 2311, 2316,		\SB@erreot	860, <u>3457</u>
889, 892, 893, 895, 896,		2328, 2330, 2338–2340,		\SB@erreov	804, <u>3438</u>
926–929, 1150, 1153–		2405, 2676, 2679, 2682		\SB@errero	
1155, 1378, 1380, 1382,		\SB@dorq <u>1652</u>		. . . . . 1558, 1580, <u>3553</u>	
1396, 1397, 1401, 1405,		\SB@dothis <u>975</u> ,		\SB@errert	
1407, 1409, 1412, 1413,		1790, 1794, 1821, 1895,		. . . . . 1558, 1580, <u>3559</u>	
1451–1455, 1965, 1967,		2228, 2244, 2260, 2293		\SB@erretex	277, <u>3499</u>
1969, 1970, 1980, 1986,		\SB@dotranspose		\SB@errevc	1273, <u>3481</u>
1992, 2007, 2014–2016,		1765, 1773, 1778, <u>1788</u>		\SB@errevo	1274, <u>3487</u>
2018, 2022, 2023, 2025,		\SB@droppage <u>349</u> , 411		\SB@errevt	1276, <u>3493</u>
2027, 2509, 2513, 2539–		\SB@echo <u>1494</u>		\SB@erridx	3386, 3396, <u>3609</u>
2542, 2572–2575, 2701–		\SB@ellipsoid <u>3096</u> ,		\SB@errmbar	1938, <u>3592</u>
2703, 2705, 2819–2822,		3345, 3349, 3381, 3393		\SB@errnoidx	3037, 3061, 3320, <u>3605</u>
2825, 2835, 3098, 3118,		\SB@emitchord		\SB@errnse	2896, <u>3405</u>
3119, 3123, 3134, 3135,		. . . . . 2480, 2485, <u>2497</u>			
3139, 3144, 3151, 3164,		\SB@emptylist <u>703</u>			
3165, 3167, 3179, 3181,		\SB@endchorus 1302, <u>1345</u>			
3200, 3298, 3299, 3308,		\SB@endcname <u>2199</u> ,			
3313, 3356–3359, 3361		2217, 2607, 2614, 2780			

\SB@Error	\SB@gtab	2778	\SB@ldqleft	1652
.... 1019, 1929, 3399,	\SB@gtinc ..	2757, 2843	\SB@ldqright	1652
3402, 3406, 3410, 3416,	\SB@gtinit ..	2757, 2839	\SB@lettertests	
3426, 3432, 3439, 3445,	\SB@gtmax ..	2777, 2838	.... 2112, 2129, 2266	
3451, 3458, 3464, 3470,	\SB@gtset		SB@lgidx (environment) ..	
3476, 3482, 3488, 3494,	.... 2757, 2838, 2847		..... 3186	
3500, 3506, 3513, 3519,	\SB@gttop ..	2757, 2812	\SB@lgindex	
3525, 3531, 3537, 3543,	\SB@hash ...	3663, 3672	.... 3250, 3253, 3273	
3549, 3554, 3560, 3566,	\SB@idxcmd	3064	\SB@ligfull ..	2460, 2468,
3572, 3579, 3584, 3588,	\SB@idxcolhead		2489, 2495, 2531, 2554	
3593, 3601, 3606, 3610	.... 3354, 3370, 3383		\SB@ligpost	2459,
\SB@errpl ...	\SB@idxcont ..	3363, 3384	2467, 2489, 2494, 2546	
\SB@errreg	\SB@idxentry 3048, 3057		\SB@ligpre	
.... 2650, 2660, 3583	\SB@idxheadsep		2458, 2489, 2493, 2537	
\SB@errreplay 2674, 3578	.... 3355, 3366, 3373		\SB@loadactives	
\SB@errrtopt ..	\SB@idxitemsep .....		... 221, 222, 232, 233,	
181, 3415	.... 3177, 3237, 3277		1212, 1258, 1341, 2619	
\SB@errscrip	\SB@idxlineskip ..	3093	\SB@lop	703,
1626, 1639, 1645, 3565	\SB@idxsetup		723, 2050, 2678, 3117	
\SB@errspos ..	3188, 3202, 3234, 3278		\SB@lyric ..	2031, 2221,
506, 3401	\SB@ifempty		2257, 2258, 2292, 2356,	
\SB@errtab .....	.. 703, 720, 1234, 2673		2371, 2400, 2402, 2415,	
3600	\SB@ilpenalty		2427, 2464, 2477, 2485	
\SB@etexttrue .....	.... 1172, 1174, 1178		\SB@lyricbox	
4	\SB@inchorusfalse		2034, 2219, 2398, 2399,	
\SB@everypar ....	..... 736, 1350		2403, 2472, 2473, 2512,	
1185,	\SB@inchorustrue ..	1310	2513, 2528, 2535, 2536,	
1238, 1248, 1251, 1253,	\SB@indexlist		2539, 2543, 2550, 2558	
1256, 1334, 1336, 1338	.... 2897, 2909, 2931,		\SB@lyricnohyp	
\SB@finger ..	3022, 3028, 3034, 3035,		.... 2033, 2292, 2475	
2736, 2847	3038, 3042, 3044, 3051		\SB@macrotests	
\SB@finloop	\SB@insertchorus		2108, 2117, 2129, 2348	
601, 602, 614, 615, 622	..... 316, 639		\SB@makeauthorindex ...	
\SB@firstchord ...	\SB@insongfalse .....		..... 3327, 3389	
2214	..... 733, 851, 3697		\SB@makeidxcolumn	
\SB@firstchordfalse ...	\SB@insongtrue	761	.... 3195, 3282, 3286	
..... 2227	\SB@intersongfalse		\SB@makembar ..	215, 1936
\SB@firstchordtrue ....	..... 734, 1556, 1578		\SB@makescripindex	
..... 2214, 2259	\SB@intersongtrue ....		..... 3326, 3368	
\SB@flatsize 2579, 2597	..... 1534, 1565		\SB@maketitleindex	
\SB@fretbar	\SB@inversefalse .....		..... 3325, 3332	
.... 2699, 2841, 2844	.. 665, 680, 735, 1269		\SB@maxmin ..	298, 2539,
\SB@fretempty 2728, 2763	\SB@inversetrue		3169, 3308, 3358, 3360	
\SB@frethit ..	..... 667, 1229		\SB@mbar ..	215, 226, 2000
2728, 2763	\SB@iwrite		\SB@mch	
\SB@fretnum ..	2948, 2959, 2986, 3076		217, 219, 228, 230, 2610	
2689, 2811	\SB@keepactive		\SB@mch@m ...	219, 2610
\SB@fretwidth 2687, 2693,	..... 2959, 2962		\SB@mch@on ..	217, 2610
2694, 2697, 2702, 2816	\SB@lastcmark		\SB@mchlig ..	2330, 2457
\SB@gettabindfalse ....	..... 670, 810, 1296			
.... 2062, 2739, 2855				
\SB@gettabindtrue 2042				
\SB@gotchorusfalse ..				
782				
\SB@gotchorustrue 1224				
\SB@groupcnt ..				
552, 557,				
570, 571, 601, 602, 614,				
615, 623, 636, 853, 1522				
\SB@grouplvl ..				
856, 1520,				
1524, 1526, 1527, 1529				

\SB@measuremark	\SB@nextcol	\SB@parindent
. <u>1935</u> , 1952, 1979	. . . . . <u>378</u> , 420, 517, 523,	1187, 1189, 1590, 1592,
\SB@measuresoff	597, 598, 694, 695, 1446	1615, 1631–1633, 1648
. 188, 202, 204, <u>209</u>	\SB@nextname <u>978</u> ,	\SB@parsesrefs
\SB@measureson	2144, 2159, 2241, 2315,	. 751, <u>1021</u> , 1586, 3700
. 188, 190, 202, <u>209</u>	2346, 2368, 2416, 2431,	\SB@parsetitles 763, <u>980</u>
\SB@measurespectrue	2453, 2466, 2483, 2506	\SB@pdffalse 8
. 211, 212	\SB@nocmark	\SB@pdftrue 12
\SB@memorize <u>2645</u>	. . . . . 644, 681, <u>1296</u>	\SB@pgbox 296,
\SB@meterbot	\SB@nocmarkclass	339, 343, 344, 359, 513
. <u>1932</u> , 1934, 2002	. . . . . 643, 681, <u>1282</u>	\SB@prcomma . 1042, <u>1054</u>
\SB@metertop	\SB@nohatfalse 2047	\SB@prcpy
. <u>1932</u> , 1934, 2002	\SB@nohattrue 2042	. . . . . 1031, 1048, <u>1052</u>
\SB@migrate <u>328</u> , 336, 337	\SB@noreplay 2066,	\SB@preamblefalse . 290
\SB@mkpage <u>299</u> , 355,	2460, 2608, 2680, <u>2685</u>	\SB@preambletrue . . 17
416, 425, 430, 435, 481	\SB@numcols 239, 240, 243,	\SB@prefshrpfalse
\SB@mrkbox	246, 247, 249, 252, 273,	1761, 1902, 1905, 1911,
. <u>297</u> , 334, 335, 357	289, <u>293</u> , 308, 311, 351,	1915, 1917, 1920, 1924
\SB@multiline	356, 368, 380, 438, 439,	\SB@prefshrptrue 1760,
3137, 3145, 3160, <u>3162</u>	442, 447, 450, 452, 459,	1901, 1903, 1907, 1909,
\SB@multitests	461, 462, 467, 479, 515,	1913, 1916, 1918, 1922
. 2119, <u>2129</u> , 2369	523, 528, 542, 595, 784,	\SB@prevversefalse
\SB@nbsp <u>2212</u> , 2333	815, 836, 1537, 2905	. . . . . 667, 1363
\SB@needkeyfalse	\SB@numhyps	\SB@prevversettrue
. 1760, 1761, 1899	<u>2032</u> , 2222, 2291, 2380,	. . . . . 665, 680, 792, 1272
\SB@needkeytrue	2474, 2520, 2521, 2561	\SB@prgr 1046, <u>1052</u>
. 1755, 1925	\SB@obeylines	\SB@prhyphen 1040, <u>1054</u>
\SB@newindex . . . . .	. . . . . <u>1160</u> , 1259, 1342	\SB@printEOL
2936, 2951, 2953, 2955	\SB@omitscripfalse . 237	3662, 3671, 3695, 3721
\SB@next	\SB@omitscripttrue	\SB@prloop
. <u>975</u> , 991, 993, 995,	. . . . . 236, 238	. . . . . 1024, <u>1028</u> , 1052,
997, 1000, 1016, 1028,	\SB@oneidxpage	1053, 1056, 1059, 1063
1030, 1037, 1039, 1041,	<u>3208</u> , 3289, 3301, 3311	\SB@prspace . 1038, <u>1060</u>
1043, 1045, 1073, 1075,	\SB@onfret	\SB@prstep <u>1028</u>
1079, 1081, 1083, 1085,	. . . . . <u>2692</u> , 2728, 2729	\SB@ptbg 996, <u>1012</u>
1087, 1090, 1093, 1114,	\SB@otesta 2069	\SB@pthead 985, <u>988</u> , 1002
1673, 1674, 1677, 1684,	\SB@otestb 2069	\SB@ptloop 989,
1794, 1796, 1798, 1801,	\SB@othertests	<u>991</u> , 1004, 1012, 1015
1815, 1818, 1825, 1833,	. . . . . 2110, <u>2129</u> , 2296	\SB@ptmain 991, <u>992</u>
1838, 1841, 1859, 1904,	\SB@out <u>2934</u> ,	\SB@ptsp 994, <u>1013</u>
1910, 1919, 2070, 2104,	2944–2946, 2948, 2958,	\SB@ptstep
2105, 2135, 2136, 2139,	2959, 2990, 2994, 2995,	1002, 1004, <u>1007</u> , 1012
2242, 2249–2255, 2265,	2998, 3002, 3065, 3075	\SB@putbox
2277, 2284, 2286, 2288,	\SB@outer <u>162</u> , 2205, 2206	. 666, <u>1148</u> , 1268, 1354
2290, 2295, 2319, 2321,	\SB@outertest	\SB@putboxes
2323, 2325, 2327, 2329,	. . . . . 2069, 2307, 2445	. . . . . 367, 414, 530
2331, 2333, 2336, 2367,	\SB@output <u>350</u> , 399, 531	\SB@quotesactive
2377, 2379, 2404, 2418,	\SB@par 1161,	. . . . . 1652, 1666, 1672
2433, 2435, 2438, 2465,	<u>1165</u> , 1183, 2321, 2502	\SB@raggedright
2484, 2500–2504, 2506		. . . . . 787, 931, 964, <u>1186</u>

\SB@rawrefs ... 738 , 750 , 751, 795, 3685, 3686	\SB@spcinit . 2223 , 2231	\SB@temp 18 , 330, 331, 555, 556, 596– 600, 606–610, 623, 643– 646, 654, 655, 670, 709, 710, 881, 883, 1063, 1107, 1109, 1820, 1852, 1862–1868, 1872, 1878, 1893, 1951, 1952, 2081, 2082, 2097–2099, 2152, 2160, 2163, 2531, 2546, 2554, 2567, 2860, 2861, 2863, 2880, 2884, 2888, 2892, 2970, 2981–2984, 2988, 2997, 2999, 3022– 3024, 3028–3030, 3034, 3036, 3066, 3067, 3076, 3099, 3102, 3122, 3168, 3216, 3219, 3222, 3321, 3323, 3324, 3704, 3706
\SB@rdqleft 1652	\SB@spdblp 437 , 455, 469	
\SB@rdqright 1652	\SB@spextnew 433 , 453, 468	
\SB@rechord 185, 199, 2617, 2671	\SB@spextold 427 , 448, 466	
\SB@repcolon 2004 , 2019, 2024	\SB@spos 417, 495, 498, 501, 504, 509	
\SB@replay 2657	\SB@sposi 446 , 498	
\SB@scanlq 1652	\SB@sposii 458 , 486, 501	
\SB@scanrq 1652	\SB@sposiii ... 475 , 504	
\SB@scripident 1643	\SB@sractives 1023, 1064	
\SB@selectcol 406 , 494, 497, 500, 503, 529	\SB@srcomma . 1067, 1073	
\SB@setbaselineskip ... 193, 207, 800, 863, 1481	\SB@srcso .. 1094, 1107	
\SB@setchord 2037 , 2226	\SB@srdash 1079	
\SB@setkeysig 1877, 1898	\SB@srhyphen 1067, 1079	
\SB@setversesep 288, 879	\SB@srspc 1067, 1075, 1087 , 1109	
\SB@sgroup 550 , 554, 556, 557, 852, 856, 1521, 1527, 2901	\SB@srspacing 1068, 1070	\SB@tempii 18 , 557, 558, 560, 562, 564, 566, 623, 625, 627, 628, 633, 635, 882, 883, 2987, 2988, 3010, 3011, 3036, 3037, 3039, 3042, 3073, 3074, 3114, 3173
\SB@skip 24 , 806, 833, 840, 990, 1133, 1134, 1136, 1138, 1145, 1382–1384, 1386, 1388, 1390, 1546, 1547, 1941, 1955, 1958, 2517, 2518	\SB@stanzabreak 665, 667, 680, 1117 , 1231, 1314, 1320	\SB@tempiii 18
SB@smidx (environment) 3186	\SB@stanzafalse ... 780	\SB@tempiv 18
\SB@songbox 292 , 376, 423, 480, 538, 544, 547, 560, 573, 581, 626, 783, 837, 839, 1536, 1552, 1567, 1572	\SB@stanzatrue 1233, 1325	\SB@tempv 18 , 1774, 1776, 1779
\SB@songlistbrk 585 , 598, 608	\SB@star ... 3705, 3706	\SB@testfalse 513, 2082, 2124, 2127, 2344, 2499, 2527
\SB@songlistcdp 585 , 600, 610	\SB@stypcol 526, 527 , 1576	\SB@testtrue 512, 2082, 2122, 2127, 2266, 2296, 2347, 2369, 2500–2504, 2528
\SB@songlistcp 585 , 599, 609	\SB@stype 526 , 562, 577, 1574, 1576	\SB@titlelist . 712 , 716, 982, 998, 1008, 1009
\SB@songlistnc 585 , 597, 607	\SB@styppage 541 , 582, 1574	\SB@titlesep . 984, 1017
\SB@songsenfalse 732, 2911	\SB@submitenv . 579 , 854	\SB@titletail 712 , 716, 720, 723
\SB@songsentrue . 2906	\SB@submitpart 553 , 577	\SB@toks 24 , 329–331, 723, 724, 983, 1001, 1009, 1010, 1014, 1023, 1025, 1052, 1053, 1056, 1059, 1062, 1766, 1774, 1779, 1789, 1799, 1802, 1810, 1823, 1828, 1871, 1872, 1879, 1893, 2050, 2675,
\SB@songwrites ... 764, 822, 3008 , 3012, 3013	\SB@submitsong 576 , 855, 1554, 1575	
\SB@spbegnew 422 , 451, 460	\SB@tabargs . 2801, 2857	
	\SB@tabindent 2219, 2220, 2739 , 2815–2817, 2827	
	\SB@targfing 2741 , 2800, 2848, 2867, 2875	
	\SB@targfret 2741 , 2798, 2811, 2870, 2874	
	\SB@targsfing 2845	
	\SB@targstr 2741 , 2799, 2802, 2803, 2812, 2838, 2841, 2862, 2864, 2871, 2876	

<code>\textheight</code>	<code>\trchordformat</code>	<code>\versenumstyle</code>
192, 353, 412, 425, 430,	. . . . . 1779, <u>1793</u>	<code>\versenumwidth</code>
435, 3246, 3258, 3298	<code>\twosongcolumns</code>	100,
<code>\textnote</code> <u>1468</u> ,	<code>\twosongcolumns</code> (option) .	150, 269, 1242, 1244
1493, 3703, 3714, 3719	. . . . . <u>239</u>	<code>\versesep</code>
<code>\textwidth</code> 251, 816		81, 683, 806, 882, 892,
<code>\theSB@songsnum</code>	U	895, 1127, 1476, 1490
. 830, 3016	<code>\u</code> 2173, 3667	<code>\vfuzz</code> 410, 640, 1395,
<code>\thesongnum</code>	<code>\uccode</code>	1947, 3244, 3296, 3317
. <u>65</u> , 790, 830, 852,	1819, 1851, 2974, 2975	<code>\vnumbered</code> <u>1191</u>
920, 951, 1521, 2917,	<code>unouter</code> (option) <u>162</u>	<code>\vnumberedfalse</code>
2939, 3016, 3428, 3435,	<code>\uppercase</code> 2976	. . . . . 1208, 1213, 1313
3441, 3447, 3453, 3459,	<code>\upshape</code> 1499, 1507	<code>\vnumberedtrue</code>
3466, 3472, 3478, 3483,	<code>\usefont</code> 45, 2005	. . . . . 1205, 1214
3489, 3495, 3508, 3515,	<code>\usepackage</code> 3417	<code>\vrule</code> 847, 1246,
3521, 3526, 3532, 3538,		1252, 1335, 1386, 1548,
3545, 3551, 3555, 3562,	V	1994, 2016, 2018, 2025,
3572, 3580, 3593, 3679	<code>\v</code> 2174, 3667	2027, 2693, 2705, 2721
<code>\theversenum</code>	<code>\vbadness</code> 410, 640, 1395,	<code>\vsize</code> 360
. <u>68</u> , 1237, 1240	1947, 3244, 3295, 3317	<code>\vsplit</code> 309, 642, 653,
<code>\tiny</code> 938, 965, 1962, 1963	<code>\vcpenalty</code> <u>107</u> , 283, 1124	662, 1949, 3200, 3246
<code>\titleprefixword</code> <u>3064</u>	<code>\verse</code> 1193	<code>\vvpenalty</code>
<code>\transcapostrue</code> 235	<code>verse</code> (environment) <u>1204</u>	<u>107</u> , 281, 283, 284, 1122
<code>\transpose</code> <u>1749</u> , 1758	<code>verse*</code> (environment) <u>1204</u>	
<code>transposecapos</code> (option) .	<code>\versefont</code> <u>41</u> , 1257	W
. <u>235</u>	<code>\versejustify</code>	<code>\write</code> 2948,
<code>\transposehere</code> <u>1762</u>,	. . . . . <u>52</u> , 137, 138, 1257	2990, 3075, 3679, 3681,
1785, 2057, 2796, 2809	<code>\versemark</code> <u>113</u> , 1232	3683, 3686, 3688, 3694,
		3707, 3709, 3715, 3721